

SEARCHABLE PACIFIC NORTHWEST HISTORY
BOOK ONE
ORIGINS
GEOLOGY, NATIVE AMERICANS, SEARCH FOR TRADE



BY
Jim Ruble
© 2018
Amazon Publishing
Seattle, Washington

Native American Inspired Art by Watercolor artist
Barb Ruble

CONTENTS

HOW TO USE THIS MATERIAL.....	3
WHY DID I UNDERTAKE SEARCHABLE PACIFIC NORTHWEST HISTORY?.....	4
SYNOPSIS.....	5
GEOLOGY	7
PACIFIC NORTHWEST INDIANS	23
B.C.E.-1499	124
1500-1599	147
1600-1699	179
BIBLIOGRAPHY.....	207
ARTICLES	218
ABOUT THE AUTHOR	221

HOW TO USE THIS MATERIAL

Searchable Pacific Northwest History provides a huge variety of topics to be studied.

I have chosen to use a chronological format that includes a series on indentions something like an outline so additional material could be easily added and existing material shifted to a new location. This also allows the reader to “copy and paste” material from this document into a new document of their own making using the “document search navigator” on their computer (Control F). This access allows anyone to construct an historic document of their own in “outline” form.

With the exception of the sections on Geology and Native Americans in Book One, this document is in chronological order by century, decade, year, month and occasionally week and day. The expanse of time covered in the first two sections makes centuries and even millennia irrelevant. In the remaining chronology events listed out of sequence in an effort make a point are placed in parenthesis () and non-sequential dates in brackets []. Quotations are in bold print and footnoted.

To construct an historic document of your own requires a two-step process:

- 1) Our website: <http://searchablehistory.com> provides a TEMPLATE of the “outline” formatting required for the new document.
 - a. [Download this TEMPLATE](#) and Save it onto your computer.
 - b. OPEN the TEMPLATE.
- 2) [Download the MS Word version of this book](#). Information COPIED from *Searchable Pacific Northwest History* and PASTED onto the TEMPLATE will result in a new document being generated in chronological order and “outline” form.

For instance, after generating a formatted TEMPLATE on a computer, a student might search the activities of **Juan Ponce de Leon**. Opening *Searchable Pacific Northwest History* and placing “de LEON” into the search navigator shows de Leon is found 37 times. The first instance is in the Synopsis “1500-1599” on page 6 tells where to begin the search. The paragraph “CONQUISTADOR JUAN PONCE de LEON BECOMES GOVERNOR OF PUERTO RICO” on page 152 begins his exploits. This paragraph can be COPIED and PASTED onto the TEMPLATE.

The next paragraph where “de LEON” is found is “SPANISH CONQUISTADOR JUAN PONCE de LEON EXPLORES (TODAY’S FLORIDA)” on page 153. This too can be copied and pasted into the TEMPLATE following the first paragraph.

Further examination of the historic document would result in other relevant information being discovered. Adding this material to the “outline” template would produce a document featuring the exploits of Juan Ponce de Leon in chronological order.

WHY DID I UNDERTAKE SEARCHABLE PACIFIC NORTHWEST HISTORY?

Computers have changed the way we look at history. The study of our past has always been constricted by the space available to present it. The person, topic, or event being studied was confined by the physical limits of books. This constricting of the past is even greater in a history book dedicated to a very broad subject. Each topic must be compressed to fit the space available. These restrictions are no longer necessary with the advent of computers and the internet.

History happens chronologically and in context. However, it is not taught that way. Rather, attention is focused on dates, names and selected topics. For instance, the exploration of Captain George Vancouver might be presented without any mention of the discoveries of Spanish explorers although both investigations occurred simultaneously and sometimes mutually. Also, American sea traders were operating in the Pacific Ocean waters while Alexander Mackenzie was actively conducting his second overland expedition to find the Pacific Ocean. Events do not occur in isolation.

The topics of missionaries to the Pacific Northwest and Hudson's Bay Company might be presented without acknowledging both entities were dealing with the same Native Americans at the same time. These interactions had a unique impact on the Indians. Or, similarly that Northwest Indian wars and Indian treaties are presented without mentioning the treaties came before the wars. Presenting history one topic at a time, while necessary until now, makes historic context almost impossible.

Presenting history one topic at a time also presents a false image of the time necessary to accomplish a task. When students are introduced to the Oregon Trail, attention is perhaps paid to the preparations essential for the journey and the sacrifices necessary. The route West is depicted passing by a series of prominent land features, hardships for the travelers may be indicated, and Oregon is reached three paragraphs or three pages after setting out depending on the detail of the text. There is no feeling for the nine months the journey on foot took to complete. The neglect of the amount of time necessary to accomplish a goal is so frequent in history books that this could, perhaps, account for the instant gratification so often demanded today.

Those of us who enjoy reading history are intrigued with adding new information to what we have previously discovered. Each addition provides an opportunity to gain new insight. We are aware that previous generations faced challenges and mysteries much like our own. Discovering how these demands were met, successfully or unsuccessfully, in the past can guide us as we seek answers to our own personal and collective dilemmas. Most history instructors strive to teach their students *about* history. My goal is to enable students to learn *from* history. As President Harry Truman noted: "The only thing new in the world is the history you don't know."

The internet has opened a vast amount of previously unavailable historic material. The writings of early Northwest historians such as Hubert Bancroft, Cecil Dryden and Oscar Osburn Winther, as well as participants who wrote about their activities are now available on line as are compilations of historic societies and the perceptions of individual authors. More information is being added every day. Access to this material is invaluable in appreciating and understanding our past. It needs to be added to our current understanding.

SYNOPSIS

GEOLOGY

In this document you will find a chronological listing of geologic time broken down by Eons, Eras, Periods and Epochs relayed in terms of a twenty-four clock. Significant events are noted such as volcanic activities, glacial events, the formation of glacial valleys and river valleys, various mountains, Lake Missoula, Grand Coulee, Dry Falls, Channeled Scablands and Puget Sound are noted. The advent of fishes, reptiles, dinosaurs and mammals are indicated. In contrast, a Chinook Indian legend that attempts to explain the earliest times is also included.

NATIVE AMERICANS

In this document the earliest people to live in the Pacific Northwest such as Marmes Man, Buhl woman, and Kennewick Man, are investigated as are theories of their origin. Coastal and Plateau Native language and culture are contrasted. Indian beliefs in the spirit world and the role of the shaman are considered. Ceremonial activities such as the potlatch, salmon ceremony and winter ceremony are examined. Class structure including slavery and political life are discussed. Native interaction with the environment, housing, Ozette village, and transportation including canoe making are presented. Fishing and hunting activities and Makah whaling are investigated. Native art work represented by clothing, jewelry, basket making and wood working is explored. Food gathering, cooking and serving, especially salmon, are presented. Attention is also placed on the cycle of life from birth to death. The impact of European and American invaders on native lives are considered.

B.C.E.-1499

An understanding of the history of the Pacific Northwest must begin prior to any European contact. This document begins with the Roman Empire and the efforts of early European and Chinese merchants who strived to establish trade. European and Chinese explorers set out to develop trade routes such as the Silk Road, develop cities as trading centers and generate wealth. Viking raiders, crusaders, Mongol invaders and Venice merchant Marco Polo each generated interest in expanding trade.

Europe sought newer, easier routes to the East. Portugal dispatched Bartholomew Dias to explore the coast of West Africa. Spain sent explorers who reached the “New World” beginning with Christopher Columbus (four voyages) inaugurating the “Age of Discovery.” Portugal and Spain, both Catholic nations, encountered a world not noted in the Bible. Pope Alexander VI, who realized their quest could lead to war, drew a “Line of Demarcation” dividing the New World between Portugal and Spain. England’s John Cabot took a northerly route to the New World (three voyages) perhaps naming “Newfoundland.”

1500-1599

Interest in the “New World” was motivated by the rivalry between Portugal and Spain. Spain sent conquistadors Juan Ponce de Leon and Vasco Nunez de Balboa, to the New World to exploit her discovery. Portugal sent explorer Jorge Alvares across the Pacific Ocean to China. Spain continued its New World exploitation with Hernan Cortes, Juan Ponce de Leon, Pedro de Alvarado, Francisco Pizarro, Hernando de Soto and Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo. Portugal’s Ferdinand Magellan attempted to sail around the world but he died when reaching the Philippines. His crew succeeded. As Spain reached the Philippines, France sent Jacques Cartier to find a shorter route to China.

Portugal created a business monopoly in the city of Macau, China. Muscovy Company was chartered in England to trade with Russia. England took an interest in North America as the Muscovy Company financed two investigations by Martin Frobisher. Francis Drake explored the western shore of North America by sea for England. Spain’s mysterious Juan de Fuca claimed to discover a “Northwest Passage” to China through North America. France became interested in the lucrative continental fur trade and abundant fishing off Canada’s Grand Banks

1600-1699

France showed an early interest in l’Acadie (Canada) when Francois Grave Pontgrave led an effort to build a colony. Samuel de Champlain explored the St. Lawrence River. Pierre Du Gua de Monts began trade between France and l’Acadie as the colony of Saint Croix Island was established.

England chartered the Virginia Company of London which established Jamestown colony. English merchants hired Henry Hudson to find a Pacific route to Asia. Pilgrims arrived in America.

Company of De Caen was Chartered by France and liquor was brought into l’Acadie (Canada) in large barrels to enhance trade with the natives. l’Acadie became known as “New France.” Cardinal Richelieu created a fur trading monopoly in New France which brought wealth to the owners and vast changes to the Indians.

Massachusetts Bay Company was chartered bringing Puritans to America. Pierre Espirit Raddison with his brother-in-law Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers explored and traded in the upper Mississippi River region bringing out a fortune in furs. Hudson’s Bay Company (HBC), chartered by England, developed a system of trading posts. Father Jacques Marquette and Louis Joliet traveled the Mississippi River almost to the Gulf of Mexico which was later reached by Robert La Salle. York Factory was established by HBC whose trading posts were raided by independent French fur traders.

SEARCHABLE PACIFIC NORTHWEST HISTORY

BOOK ONE: EXPLORATION

I. GEOLOGY, II. PACIFIC NORTHWEST INDIANS, III. B.C.E.-1699

GEOLOGY

HISTORY OF EARTH REMAINS SHROUDED IN MYSTERY

Earth has existed for billions of years in a variety of changing forms our world appears to have begun as a fiery ball a condition would have been permanent

except for the effects of air surrounding the planet

air is responsible for most of the changes on the earth's surface

Unimaginable changes have occurred on the surface of the Earth during its existence

truly remarkable animals have populated the planet, sometimes for vast amounts of time, and have died out

only a select few animals, fish, insects and organism have survived

humans occupied the planet very late in the Earth's history

GEOLOGIC TIME IS INCOMPREHENDIBLE

In an effort to understand the vast amounts of time and enormous changes

during Earth's history-scientists have developed a timeline composed of two "**Eons**"

Precambrian Eon and **Phanerozoic** Eon are the largest division of geologic time

To grasp the unimaginable amounts of time required to develop earth as we know it today

it is sometimes convenient to think in terms of a twenty-four clock¹

with vast amount of time compared to each hour on that clock

representation of time on our twenty-four clock varies by author

but usually not by significant amounts in relation to 4.6 billion years

"PRECAMBRIAN ERA" -- THE OLDEST KNOWN PORTION OF GEOLOGIC TIME

Over billions of years the earth's surface cooled enough to form a solid crust

surface of the planet was formed and reformed many times over these billions of years

it was a time of great volcanic activity and mountain building

basins of cooled Earth saw water in the form of steam cool

and form ponds, lakes and oceans

cracks developed in the cool rock allowing water to enter and freeze and thaw

Precambrian Era lasted from about 4.6 billion years ago to about 540 million years ago

this is about ninety percent of the time the planet has existed, or about 4.5 billion years

during much of this era Earth remained in a molten (liquid) form

¹ Geologic Timescale: http://jan.ucc.nau.edu/lrm22/lessons/timeline/24_hours.html

with the exception of zircons dating back 4.4 billion years there was not even rock
Precambrian Eon is composed of three “Eras”

Hadean Era, Archean Era and Proterozoic Era

Precambrian Eon’s Hadean Era was from about 4.6 billion to 3.8 billion years ago
or from midnight to 4:10:26 a.m. on our twenty-four-hour clock
single cellular life appears before 4:00 a.m.

Precambrian Eon’s Archean Era was from about 3.8 billion to 2.5 billion years ago
or from 4:10:26 to 10:57:23 a.m. on our twenty-four-hour clock
photosynthesis begins around 5:30 a.m.

Precambrian Eon’s Proterozoic Era was from 2.5 billion to 542 million years ago
or from 10:57:23 a.m. to 9:10:20 p.m. on our twenty-four-hour clock
in this huge amount of time multicellular life appears around 5:30 p.m.

Very little is known about the climate during the Precambrian Era

but the Earth was driven into a very cold glacial age at the end of the era

Using our proposed twenty-four clock to represent the vast amounts of time in Earth history
this era would be depicted as lasting from midnight to about 9:10:20 p.m.

or lasting more than twenty-one of the twenty-four hours

Remainder of time composes the **Phanerozoic Eon** from 9:10:20 p.m. to midnight (today)

PHANEROZOIC EON ENCOMPASSES ALL OF THE REST OF TIME

Phanerozoic Eon is divided into eras: **Paleozoic Era, Mesozoic Era and Cenozoic Era**

each of these is further divided into **Periods**

each time interval is marked by a relatively abrupt change in fossil types and numbers

length of time attributed to each Era, Period and Epoch is, of course, approximate

(and sometimes are simply wild guesses)

Cenozoic Era time **Periods** can be further divided **Epochs**

PALEOZOIC ERA CAN BE DIVIDED INTO PERIODS

There is enough fossil material to divide the Paleozoic Era into eight identifiable **Periods**

Cambrian, Ordovician, Silurian, Devonian, Mississippian, Pennsylvanian, Carboniferous
and Permian

Paleozoic Era lasted from about 540 million years ago to some 230 million years ago

or from 9:10:20 p.m. to 10:426:24 p.m. on the twenty-four-hour clock

there is enough fossil material to divide the Paleozoic Era into identifiable **Periods**

“**Cambrian Period**” of the Paleozoic Era

lasted from about 540 million years ago to 490 million years ago

(9:10:20 p.m.-9:27:08 p.m. on our twenty-four-hour clock)

sea weed floated on an endless ocean of saltwater in the mild climate

“**Cambrian Explosion**” of life occurred

fossil records show life existed in the ocean waters on the Earth’s surface

these creatures eventually developed shells resembling clams or cockles
and gave rise to the development of sea life lacking a backbone
these invertebrates provided the only living existence on earth
“**sedimentary**” rock was formed by deposits that settled at the bottom of the ocean
weight of mud and pressure from shifting earth compressed the material
into solid form
chemical action further fused this material together
shells of organic (living) material also was deposited and formed into rock
limestone and shale are common sedimentary rocks of this type

Ordovician Period” lasted from about 490 million years ago to 440 million years ago
(9:27:08 p.m.-9:42:06 p.m.)

primitive fish and fungi developed as the first complex life-forms

land first emerged slightly above the world of water

heat and pressure forced molten (“igneous”) rock from the Earth’s interior

lifting the sedimentary rock upwards through the surrounding water

mountain ranges were formed by igneous rock lifting sedimentary rock

volcanoes ejected lava, pumice (volcanic glass) and ash

during the uplifts, seas were drained exposing sedimentary and igneous rock

high sea levels fell as the earth cooled as ice formed in the Arctic and Antarctic regions

primitive plants appeared on the land

this period ended with huge glaciers formed as great flows of ice grew in size

extinction wiped out many plant and animal species

Silurian Period lasted from about 440 million years ago to about 417 million years ago
(9:41:06 p.m. to 9:49:46 p.m.)

first plants capable of conducting water (as compared to mosses) appeared on the land

high sea levels existed worldwide leading to the rise of hinged-shelled species and corals

starfish-like and sea urchin-like creatures appeared

fossils of the first jawed fishes and insects like centipedes and millipedes appeared

“**Devonian Period**” lasted from about 417 million years ago to about 354 million years ago
(9:40:46 p.m.-10:07:33 p.m.)

this was the “Age of Fishes” as fish and land plants become abundant and diverse

sharks and water vertebrates emerged on the earth

new insects also made an appearance

air breathing animals appeared on dry land

mass extinction at the end of the era wiped out 30% of all animal families

probably due to an increase in the size and number of glaciers

or the impact of a meteorite striking the Earth

Mississippian Period lasted from about 354 million years ago to 323 million years ago
(10:07:33 p.m.-10:19:03 p.m.)

much of North American was elevated above the primal sea

winged insects come into existence
this was the age of amphibians that developed into great abundance
first reptiles came into existence
first forests spread across the planet
coal developed from decayed plant life subjected to vast amounts of heat and pressure
Pacific coast made its first appearance during this coastal “First Geologic Age”
land composed of two granite islands began to rise up from depths of the sea
one known as Siskiyou Island was in the region of today’s Siskiyou Mountains
located three hundred miles east of today’s coastline
in Northern California and Southern Oregon
another known as Shoshone Island, was in the heart of today’s Blue Mountains
of southeast Washington and northeast Oregon
both Shoshone and Siskiyou islands were thrust up far into the ocean
cut off from the continent -- ancient coast line was thus two island groups
fossils from this period were tropical life forms that were washed by warm seas
these left a record of ancient beach levels
an immense bay was created on Shoshone Island high in the Blue Mountains
streams brought down massive mineral deposits of silt and sands
that reached a thickness of many thousands of feet deep on the ocean floor
these massive deposits gradually hardened into sedimentary rocks
such as limestone, sandstone and shale
magnetite mineral veins in today’s Stevens Country were formed
by heat and pressure from calcium and magnesium salts
located on the ocean floor
seismic disturbances such as earthquakes and volcanic eruptions were so violent
that old sedimentary rock of the ocean bed was sometimes changed
to “metamorphic” rock by heat and pressure
for example, marble could be transformed from limestone and slate from shale
at about the same time uplifts took place as the continent slowly rose and expanded
in response to pressure from the shrinking crust of the Earth
rocks were massed and folded together -- ground level was elevated -- water receded
what had been the bottom of the sea now became dry land
vast barrier of pinnacled peaks composed of the Okanogan Uplift
and Chelan Uplift appeared
granite and porphyry (reddish purple rock) broken by flows of volcanic lava
was veined with gold, silver and copper
Pennsylvanian Period lasted from 323 million years ago to about 290 million years ago
(10:19:03 p.m.-10:26:24 p.m.)
this was the age of large winged insects and amphibians which flourished
land of the Pacific Northwest saw alternating periods of flooding and drying

silt carried by the many rivers eventually filled in the bays
which had been thousands of feet deep in places
rocks such as schist, marble, slate and quartzite were formed
masses of melted rock fused with silver, gold and other metals
were thrust upward through the earth's crust

Permian Period lasted from about 290 million years ago to about 230 million years ago
(10:26:24 p.m.-10:41:26 p.m.)

reptiles and amphibians developed as a life form in the Northwest
this "Second Geologic Age" for today's Pacific coast was the "Age of Volcanoes"
uplifting of the Blue Mountains and Cascade Mountains from the ocean floor ended
as the Earth's crust cooled and shrank
lava floods rose from fissures and vents in the Earth which formed all over the region
molten glassy or porous lava, cinders or ash welled up and forcibly spewed out
from these cracks in the Earth's surface becoming sheets that cooled into rock
land formations were blown apart by volcanic eruption and seismic forces
vast outflows of shiny, black volcanic basalt and gray fine-grained andesitic rock
swept westward from the Blue Mountains to meet similar flows
moving eastward from Cascade Mountains
these molten masses, called magma, cooled slowly and hardened
frequently the fiery floods of molten rock transformed original rocks
into various metamorphic forms of gneiss, porphyry and marble
greatest result of the Age of Volcanoes was the elevation of stupendous isolated peaks
cooling lava, cinders and ash built up enormous peaks such as Mt. Rainier, Mt. Baker,
Mt. Adams, Mt. St. Helens, Glacier Peak, Goat Rocks, Silver Star Mountain
and West Crater in Washington's Cascade Mountain Range
Mt. Olympus, Mt. Constance, Mt. Anderson, The Brothers (double peaked),
Mt. Deception, Mt. Angeles, Boulder Peak and Mt. Storm King
in the Olympic Mountain Range appear to be no longer active
sometimes intervals of centuries stretched between lava flows
one of greatest lava flows of all time inundated a large part of Eastern Washington
Columbia River basalt, one the largest bodies of lava in the world,
covered a great part of Washington and Snake River plain in Idaho,
eastern Oregon and much of Northern California -- 250,000 square miles
in some places, lava flowed over a mile deep
mountain chains were in place with the close of the "Age of Volcanoes"
but plains and valleys visible today were not yet fashioned
five regions of Washington State came into existence during the Permian Period:
•Olympic Peninsula of the Pacific coast was composed of a narrow plain
with towering Olympic Mountains in the north and the Willapa Hills to the south
Mount Olympus (8,150 foot) is surrounded by jumble of jagged peaks

- Willapa Hills, built of softer materials, are now much lower
as they have worn down rather rapidly
numerous lakes, glaciers and rivers occur today in the region
glaciers have cut deeply into the Olympic Mountains
some remnants of old deposits still can be seen in higher elevations
heaviest rainfall in the continental United States occurs here at Grays Harbor,
Willapa Bay and in the dark rain forests of the Olympic Peninsula
this is one of the most heavily forested regions of North America
dense growths of spruce, fir, cedar and hemlock cover the region
and display almost impenetrable undergrowth
- Puget Sound Lowland represents only about five percent of the area of the state
it runs from the Canadian border on the north to the Columbia River on the south
Puget Sound gouged by glaciers from various “Ice Ages” is the heart of the region
eons ago the region was uplifted above surrounding lands to the east and west
but being composed of softer rock it was easily eroded by wind, rain and frost
here are excellent harbors and great forests of cedar, hemlock, spruce and fir
many important rivers are located in the region
Cowlitz River flows into the Columbia River at today’s Kelso and Longview
Chehalis River flows west emptying into Grays Harbor at Aberdeen
Carbon Rivers enter the Puyallup River at Orting
as does the White River at Sumner
Puyallup, Nisqually, Snohomish, Skagit, Nooksack rivers
empty into Puget Sound
of these, the Snohomish River is the largest in volume
 - Cascade Mountain Range spans north and south in a series of earth folds
they have a foundation of granite, volcanic and sedimentary rock
at the Canadian border these mountains spread east and west
for one hundred twenty miles
Columbia River carved a spectacular gorge through sixty miles of mountains
Cascade Mountains create two separate climate zones in the State of Washington
its western slopes receive the most rainfall from the Pacific Ocean
eastern slopes experience drought
as the mountains cut off the Pacific’s moisture
many important rivers in Washington have their source in the Cascade Mountains
several have been harnessed to generate electric power
Cowlitz, Lewis, Skagit, Snoqualmie and White rivers
elevations in the Cascades vary from lofty peaks to low passes
four peaks are active volcanoes in Washington:
-Mt. Rainier (14,408’ but 2,000’ blew off leaving a crater two miles wide)
two cinder cones rose to form the present summit;

-Mt. Adams (12,307');

-Mt. Baker (10,730');

-Mt. St. Helens (9,697' before the 1980 eruption it is now 8,366 feet high)

most well-known of the Cascade Mountain passes are:

-Rainy Pass (4,855 ft.) on State Route Highway 20;

-Washington Pass (5,477 ft.) on State Highway 20;

-Stevens Pass (4,061 ft.) on U.S. Highway 2;

-Snoqualmie Pass (3,022 ft.) on U.S. Interstate Highway 405;

-Cayuse Pass (4,675 ft.) on State Highway 410 and U.S. Highway 12;

-Chinook Pass (5,430 ft.) on State Route Highways 410;

-White Pass (4,500 ft.) on U.S. Highway Highways 12;

Blewett Pass, formerly known as Swauk Pass, (4,124 feet) U.S. Highway 97

runs north and south along the spine of the mountain range

it links Wenatchee, Washington in the north to Ellensburg on the south

•Columbia River Basin also known as the Columbia Plateau

occupies more than one-fourth of the area of the state

from the Cascade Mountains to Spokane, Washington

Columbia Basin is surrounded by mountains and uplands:

-east are the Rocky Mountains,

-south are the Blue Mountains and Horse Heaven Hills,

-west are the Cascade Mountains,

-north are the Okanogan Highlands and Selkirk Range

saucer shaped Columbia Basin was broken country

with lakes and wooded mountains before lava flows took place

and volcanic basalt rock poured into the mold

today ancient mountain summits still remain as hills

volcanic rock covers much of the shattered fragments of the original crust

however, in many places primeval granite or sandstone remains uncovered

to the north the Waterville Plateau drops one thousand feet

to form Quincy Basin which extends up the Okanogan Valley

to Omak, Washington

at the southern end of the Columbia Basin is the Pasco Basin

eastward is the Palouse Country where the Palouse Hill were built up

from loess (yellow-brown sediment mixed with volcanic ash)

winds have formed the fertile loess into long dunes

Steptoe Butte, prehistoric crystalline rock rises 1,200 feet above bedrock

and more than 3,600 feet above sea level

Columbia Basin today is known for wheat lands, irrigated farms, orchards

and electric power projects

•Okanogan Highlands extend across northern Eastern Washington into Canada

lava flows did not invade this region which today is composed of older basalt rock and granite -- some of the oldest rock in the state these include schist, and ancient granite all formed millions of years ago there is an abundance of minerals such as: gold, silver, copper, lead, zinc, and some tungsten and uranium

Okanogan Highlands are noted for their long north-south trench valleys with rivers that have cut deep canyons down the center best known of these rivers are:

- Colville and Pend d'Oreille rivers which flow to the north
 - Columbia, Okanogan, and San Poil rivers which flow south
 - Kettle and Methow rivers which flow southeast
- these valleys are ideal for farming, dairying, stock-raising and fruit-growing

Permian Period ended with the largest mass extinction as yet known fifty percent of all animal families, ninety-five percent of all marine species and many trees became extinct perhaps because of glaciations or volcanic activity

MESOZOIC ERA IS THE FIRST EXPANSE OF TIME OF THE PHANEROZOIC EON

This "Third Geologic Age" in the Pacific Northwest was a time of flooding and drying **Mesozoic Era** lasted from about 230 million years ago to some 60 million years ago or from about 9: 57 p.m.to about 10:57 p.m. on the twenty-four-hour clock this was known as the "Age of Reptiles"

Triassic Period lasted from about 230 million years ago to about 200 million years ago (10L41:26 p.m.-10:57:31 p.m.)

during this period mollusks were the dominant invertebrates on Earth many reptiles, for example, turtles came into existence as did insects such as flies animal life diversified as the first dinosaurs and mammals appeared on the Earth Northwest was flooded and dried several times during this period upheavals of mingled granite and volcanic masses took place in the Cascades, Blue Mountains and Rockies this process imprisoned a vast sea over today's Eastern Washington deposits of sediment were formed hundreds and thousands of feet in depth Yakima, Walla Walla and Spokane rivers formed smooth valleys and lesser streams similar processes fashioned the valleys of the Willamette River and other streams between the Cascades and the Coastal Mountains to the west

Triassic period ended with minor extinctions that allowed dinosaurs to expand their range

Jurassic Period lasted from about 200 million years ago to about 145 million years ago (10:57:31 p.m.- 11:14:27 p.m.)

flesh-eating and plant-eating dinosaurs ranged over vast areas of the planet formerly cold climate turned mild and humid

birds and flowering plants made their first appearance
Cretaceous Period lasted from about 145 million years ago to about 60 million years ago
(11:14:27 p.m.-11:39:30 p.m.)
this is the “Age of Dinosaurs”
first feathered dinosaurs and crocodile-like creatures appeared
as did the earliest-known butterflies
and the earliest-known snakes, ants and bees
this is the period of greatest flooding in the Pacific Northwest

CENOZOIC ERA INCLUDES TODAY

Cenozoic Era includes two Periods: **Tertiary Period** and **Quaternary Period**

Cenozoic Era lasted from about 60 million years ago to about 1.8 million years ago
or from about 11:52 p.m.to midnight (today) on the twenty-four-hour clock
vast climate changes took place around the globe over the millions of years
global warming events alternated with ice ages

Tertiary Period lasted from about 60 million to the neighborhood of 30 million years ago
(11:39:30 p.m.-11:59:11 p.m.)

North America roughly took shape as general erosion altered the landscape
grasses were in abundance on the land

this vegetation was subtropical in the then-low Cascade Mountains
this period saw the first large mammals and primitive primates
sediment in the lake bottoms accumulated at a rate of a fraction of an inch a year
and over vast amounts of time reached a thickness of 3,000 feet in places
a record of subtropical plant life on lake bottoms was left as fossils
these marshy Cascade Mountain lakes became beds of coal

Rocky Mountains were elevated to a height which created great snow fields
and continued to rise by volcanic and folding action

Cascade Mountains saw extensive volcanic activity which elevated these mountains
many layers of lava flows have been counted

after the seventh lava flow from the top had cooled, many feet of soil accumulated
sufficient time elapsed for trees six feet in diameter to grow
sixth flow of lava from the top buried this forest -- fossil trees may still be seen
Cascades became high enough to block rain carried inland from the ocean
Eastern Washington developed an arid climate and was slowly changed
into a system of great fresh-water lakes that became the Columbia River
and its tributaries

bed of the Columbia River through the mountains
had already eroded to a depth of 900 feet
extensive volcanic ash and sedimentation covered Washington State
streams of lava poured down the valleys and created today’s Spokane Falls

fractures occurred along the ocean floor as the granite and surrounding rock cooled
quantities of liquid granite were forced up and through ocean deposits
baking these rocks into shale, schist, quartzite and marble
silica containing metals flowed into these fissures becoming veins of ore
ores, gold, silver, copper, lead and zinc infused with liquid granite
volcanic activity continued in southern Oregon's Cascade Mountains
Mt. Mazama, a 12,000-foot-high volcano, fell into its own crater
springs of water filled in the great hole to a depth of 2,000 feet
Crater Lake came into existence
Mt. Multnomah, a 16,000-foot-high volcano, was destroyed by a violent eruption
choking the crater except for three small volcanic cones
that formed Three Sisters peaks
this circular group of mountains show a far greater crater once existed
these peaks are the third, fourth and fifth highest mountains in Oregon
Olympic Mountains appeared but only as a chain of islands off the Pacific coast
Pacific Ocean remained in place long enough to deposit mud and silt
which captured sea animals
Puget Sound region rocks were formed by acquiring sediment
swamps were repeatedly covered with sand as the ocean periodically rose and fell
old lake bed was turned to rock, tilted and crumpled by earthquakes
emptying out its waters -- huge inland sea was drained or evaporated
mammals, as shown by fossil remains, abounded in the Puget Sound region:

- one animal, the oreodon, presented a curious assemblage of parts
that suggested a kinship to the deer, hog and camel
types varied -- some were as small as a fox; others were as large as an elk;
- little horses with three toes (mesohippus) existed in great numbers
they varied in size from the size of a large dog to that of a donkey;
- rhinoceros lived on the shores of the earliest lakes;
- several varieties of hogs and fierce dogs of great size
roamed the Puget Sound area;
- cats similar to the cougar armed with long, slender teeth were frequently found
as were the remains of miniature deer no larger than a rabbit

modern birds could be seen in the Puget Sound region
first hominids (human-like australopithecines) appeared on the planet in Africa
approximately four million years ago (11:59 on the twenty-four-hour clock)
relatively complete skeleton named "**Lucy**" was found in Ethiopia
by Donald Johnson -- 1978
she was named after the popular Beatles' 1967 song
Lucy in the Sky with Diamonds
this female was dated to 3.2 million years ago

these small creatures were four to five feet tall
and weighed between 65 and 120 pounds
australopithecines became extinct about two million years ago
Quaternary Period began about 1.8 million year ago to today (11:59:11 P.M, to midnight)
major glaciers spread across North America and Europe
first humans (Homo sapiens) walked the Earth 200,000 years ago
along with gigantic woolly mammoths which were early relatives of mastodons
and, even later, elephants
woolly mammoths had long curved tusks and coarse hair falling below their knees
saber-toothed cats and 400-pound ground sloths roamed the region
giant sloths fifteen to eighteen feet long were covered with “mylodon” (long hair)
they could rise on their hind legs to a height of ten feet tall long
sharp claws were both defensive weapons are a way to bring down prey
very thick hide protected them from all predators – except humans
climate turned cold some scientists suggest massive ice sheets were formed
this most recent Ice Age in the Pacific Northwest was at least the fifth time
glaciers had covered the region
ice robbed much of the moisture from the oceans
sea level fell was as much as three hundred feet lower than today
low enough to form a long bridge between Asia and North America
even today North American and Asia remain close via the Bering Strait
scientists discovered as early as 25,000 years ago Alaska’s central interior was ice free
elevation of western American was much higher during this “Glacial Age” than today
mountains were elevated to stupendous heights by upheaval and volcanic action
erosion constantly wore down the surface of the Earth
wind erosion blew topsoil against mountains and uplands wearing them down
rivers washed away soil and cut amazingly deep canyons into solid rock
leaving “V-shaped” river valleys
ice glaciers wore away soil and rock and ground against the mountains
gouging “U-shaped” glacial valleys
there were two types of glaciers
“Continental glaciers” pushed down from the north and repeatedly covered large parts
of northern North America in ice sheets at times reaching over 10,000 feet thick
northern half of today’s Washington was repeatedly covered
as ice thawed and formed
forward edge of the continental glaciers scooped out Puget Sound
and Lake Washington
a tongue of glacial ice one-half mile thick covered Puget Sound
ice over Puget Sound reached its maximum advance south
to within a few miles south of today’s Olympia -- 14,000 years ago

“moraine,” glacial junk and coal, was shoved ahead of the glaciers
as they moved very slowly south powered by their own enormous weight
when the Okanogan Valley was covered with ice what is now Clark Fork River
was dammed forming “Lake Missoula” in the Flathead Valley of Montana
Columbia River, which was much larger than it appears today, also was dammed
Columbia forced a new channel where Grand Coulee Dam stands today
this new channel became known as the “Grand Coulee”
it became the world’s greatest example of canyon cut by a glacial river
417-foot-high “Dry Falls,” is thought to be the greatest known waterfall
that ever existed
water 300 feet deep rolled over a cliff nearly three miles wide
pot holes bored by the falls today are known as Deep Lake and Perch Lake
water continued downriver to form Park Lake, Blue Lake, Alkali Lake
and Soap Lake
as the glaciers melted, they left immense basalt boulders: “haystack” rocks
“Moses Coulee” and the “Channeled Scablands” to the north of Grand Coulee
was created when Lake Missoula burst through its ice dam
“Alpine glaciers” of enormous size descended the Western Cascades slopes
powered by its own massive weight these glaciers leveled the ground
as they plowed their way down mountain slopes and scoured the coastal plain
Alpine glacier canyons can be seen today in Washington State and still awe
the largest Alpine glacier advanced from Pend d’Oreille Lake
“Pend d’Oreille Glacier” closed the western end of the Spokane Valley
waters were impounded in the valley and formed a huge lake
other Alpine glaciers on the east side of the Cascades scooped out great lakes
southwest across present-day Spokane as far as Medical Lake and Spangle
beds of Chelan, Okanogan, Kootenai, Flathead, Priest, Coeur d’Alene,
and Arrow lakes were all scooped out by glaciers
yet another alpine glacier moved down the Yakima River Valley
throughout the Columbia Plateau of Eastern Washington
new channels were cut and old water courses were dammed
innumerable lakes were formed and transformed in shape and size
with the return of warmer climate approximately 14,000 years ago
land warmed and glacial ice sheets began to retreat
continental glaciers retreated to the north
alpine glaciers retreated into higher and higher elevations
scientific evidence exists that as the climate grew warmer
new lakes and saltwater sounds were formed
Lake Washington was free of ice -- 13,500 years ago
floods of water which had been trapped in the glacial ice were released

valleys were flooded by a sea level even higher than that of today
great shallow lakes fed by melt water from the mountains
filled the long trenches gouged out by the glaciers
melting caused floods in the interior on Eastern Washington
retreating Okanogan ice Lobe allowed Columbia River to resume its former course
abandoned channel, now left dry, became known as the Grand Coulee
Columbia River flowed through an area known today as the Channeled Scablands
Columbia Plateau was surrounded by rivers but had few surface streams
today it is composed of a gravel desert of hills and deep canyons
and has an extensive soil-covered area
ridges were separated by wide spaces with deep coulees
floods followed these channels and carried off soil leaving denuded hills
floods followed the line of least resistance deepening first the old channels
then excavating a maze of new channels
Scablands contained interlaced channels of varying depth
That formed a pattern within a pattern
two deep gashes, Moses Coulee and Grand Coulee
led away from the Okanogan ice Lobe which crossed the Columbia River
however, the melting ice cap alone could not supply the amount of water
necessary to cause the effect that resulted
perhaps the bursting of the ice barrier forming Lake Missoula
on the northwest released a sufficient amount of water

EFFECTS OF THE MOST RECENT ICE AGE CAN BE SEEN

Today's Columbia River flows some 1,200 miles to the Pacific Ocean
it is one of the great rivers of the world draining about 259,000 square miles
Columbia River drainage includes 60,000 square miles of British Columbia in Canada
however, 85% of the river is located below the international boarder
in the state of Washington
Washington, Oregon, all of Montana west of the Continental Divide,
small areas of Nevada, northern Utah and western Wyoming
are drained by the Columbia and its tributaries
source of the Columbia River is Columbia Lake in eastern British Columbia, Canada
it runs between two stunning chains of mountains, the Selkirks in British Columbia
and the Cascades in Washington, Oregon and Northern California
Columbia River reaches its northern-most point at 52° north
where it receives the Canoe River
Columbia then makes a grand turn and runs south into the Arrow Lakes
it soon joins the Kootenay River and its tributaries in British Columbia
entering today's Washington state, the Columbia River gains the Pend d'Oreille River

flowing from Lake Pend d'Oreille which is fed by Montana's Clark Fork River
Columbia River is now larger than North America's Rio Grande
and Colorado rivers and Europe's Seine and Elbe rivers
Spokane River from northern Idaho joins the Columbia
next the Okanogan River which drains southern British Columbia is added
making the Columbia larger than Asia's Tigris-Euphrates River
and Europe's Loire and Don rivers
Yakima River flowing from the Cascade Mountains enters the Columbia
Snake River beginning in Yellowstone Park
flows through Wyoming, Nevada and Idaho
it delivers the waters of several major rivers including the Portneuf, Owyhee,
Malheur, Powder, Grande Ronde, Henrys Fork, Malad, Boise, Payette,
Salmon, Clearwater and Palouse rivers
now the Columbia is larger than Europe's Po, Dnieper and Rhone rivers
and Africa's Nile River
Walla Walla River next empties into the Columbia
from Oregon the Columbia River receives the Umatilla River, Willow Creek,
John Day, Deschutes, Hood, Sandy and Willamette rivers
Washington from the north side of the Columbia adds the Klickitat,
White Salmon Lewis, Kalama, Toutle and Cowlitz rivers
making it larger in volume than Europe's Rhine and Danube rivers,
Africa's Zambezi River, Asia's Indus River
and North America's Fraser and Nelson rivers

EROSION HAS CHANGED THE FACE OF THE EARTH SINCE THE LAST ICE AGE

Erosion by wind and water scarred the Earth's surface
underground water flowed in deep veins below the surface
this water was heated to the boiling point and dissolved minerals
boiling water escaped the Earth as geysers, or hot pools, or mud springs
springs provided a surface outlet for underground water that ranges in temperature
soil in the Pacific Northwest, largely volcanic dust, remains extraordinarily fertile

CLIMATE HAS REMAINED HOSPITABLE SINCE THE LAST ICE AGE

Long warm periods between Ice Ages indicate climate change has taken place
land dried out over thousands of years -- giant Northwest forests began to be established
Japan Ocean Current bringing warm temperatures has an effect on the Pacific coast
Pacific Northwest is warmer in winter than other regions of the same latitude
on the Atlantic coast or the Mississippi Valley
summer remains cooler than on the Atlantic coast
Cascade Mountains divide the region into a humid western section and a dry eastern section

“Chinook Winds” originally applied to summer winds that blew into the Willamette Valley from the coast region north of the Columbia River where the Chinook Indians dwell with usage the meaning was changed to the equatorial trade winds that blow from the southwest in winter striking the coast from northern California to Alaska currently Chinook Winds deliver rain west of the Cascades and penetrate to the interior however, robbed of its moisture, the warm breath of the Chinook Winds often causes the blanket of snow to disappear from the ground in a few hours

“LATE QUATERNARY PERIOD” OF THE CENOZOIC ERA

This final period is also known as the “Holocene Epoch” or “Modern Age”

it has existed from about 11,000 years ago

(identified at midnight on our twenty-four clock)

Herds of horses and camels roamed Eastern Washington until they were driven off by cold mass extinction of large mammals and many birds happened about 10,000 years ago probably caused by the end of the last Ice Age

Comprehending the unimaginably vast geologic time that existed is impossible understanding the events that took place is equally imponderable even with the use of modern scientific equipment

and careful analysis of vast collections of fossils that have been unearthed

Native Americans had access to none of that equipment and information so legends were proposed to explain the unknowable

CHINOOK INDIANS HAVE THEIR OWN EXPLANATION OF GEOLOGIC TIME

Chinook Indians told of the great monster beaver, Wishpoosh, who inhabited Lake Kichelos² at the summit of the (Cascade)³ mountains at the source of the (Yakima) river

Wishpoosh was of enormous size and had a ravenous appetite

he was in the habit of seizing and devouring lesser creatures

who came to fish at his lake

and even devoured vegetation to appease his hunger

Wishpoosh became so destructive that Speelyei, (coyote god of the mid-Columbia) region, attempted to kill the giant beaver

Speelyei went to the lake with his spear tied to his wrist and began to fish

as soon as Wishpoosh saw Speelyei invading his territory the giant beaver attacked

Speelyei threw his spear and struck the giant beaver

who immediately dove to the bottom of the lake dragging Coyote with him

Spellyei and Wishpoosh struggled so mightily they tore out the banks of the lake

floods waters swept down the canyon until the water was dammed up

in greatest lake ever seen located where the Columbia, Yakima and Snake rivers meet

² William Denison Lyman. *The Columbia River: Its History, Its Myths, Its Scenery, Its Commerce*. P. 7-9.

³ locations in parentheses (Cascade) indicate modern names for geographic locations

But the struggle between Wishpoosh and Speelyei did not end
as the combatants tugged, ripped and bit at one another, the dam holding the great lake
gave way sending a huge wave down the Columbia River toward the ocean
Wishpoosh and Spellyei tumbled over and over again as they were swept down the river
Coyote god Spellyei grabbed bushes and rocks and trees
to pull himself out of the massive wave
these efforts formed the Columbia Gorge
but Spellyei still could not get out of the wave
Wishpoosh was furious that Spellyei had driven him from his beautiful lake
the giant beaver ate all of the salmon in the river ahead of him to increase his strength
then he swam out to sea with Spellyei in close pursuit
Wishpoosh threw his giant arms around a whale and swallowed it whole
adding to his strength
Spellyei was frightened by the giant beaver's might
but coyote was the most cunning of animals
he turned himself into a tree branch and drifted among the fish
until Wishpoosh swallowed him
Spellyei turned himself back into his natural form, took out his knife
and cut the insides of the giant beaver -- Wishpoosh gave a great cry and died
Spellyei called on his friend Muskrat who help drag the body of Wishpoosh to shore⁴
coyote and muskrat threw the pieces of Wishpoosh on the land creating tribes of people
Nez Perce were made from the head of Wishpoosh to make them great in council
Cayuse were created from the massive arms of Wishpoosh
so they would be strong and powerful with war clubs and the bow
coyote made the Yakimas from the beaver's ribs and the Chinooks from the belly
beaver's legs were used to make the Klickitats so they would be skilled at running
remaining skin and blood were used to make the Snakes (Shoshone)
who thrived on war and blood
Once the tribes were formed Spellyei returned up the Columbia River to rest
but he was so weary that he did not notice the coastal people
had been created without mouths
god Ecahni happened along and fixed the problem by cutting mouths for them
some he made too large and some he made crooked as a joke
this explained why the mouths of the coastal villagers were not quite perfect
Today's geologic explanation of the natural changes which took place over eons
is hardly less fantastic than the Native American version of geologic events

⁴ S.E. Schlosser, *Coyote and Wishpoosh: from the Chinook Tribe*,
americanfolklore.net/folklore/2010/08/coyote_and_wishpoosh.html.

PACIFIC NORTHWEST INDIANS

ORIGIN OF NATIVE AMERICAN PEOPLES REMAINS SHROUDED IN MYSTERY

Original homeland of the Native Americans is lost in the distant past
there is even a question if all of these people came from the same original location
In an attempt to fill in the unknown past, Indians developed myths and legends
which they passed through succeeding generations
these stories provided an early foundation
to explain the development of significant characteristics of groups of people
they established a collective identity and related the group's hierarchy and status
in relation to other people and fundamental resources in their environment

AN OKANOGAN NATIVE LEGEND ADDRESSES THE BEGINNINGS OF PEOPLE

Long ago when the sea was young white giants lived on the land far across the sea
their lives were happy until war came and the giants fought among themselves
Their chief, a woman named Scomalt, drove the fighters to the edge of the land
she broke off the piece where they were standing and pushed it out to sea
this broken piece of island was swept by storms and scorched by the sun
many died until eventually only one man and woman remained alive
Their island began to sink so they built a canoe and paddled onward
after paddling for many days they came to some islands
by this time the couple had lost their whiteness as the sun had burned them red
their descendants became the Okanogan Indians

EVEN IN ANCIENT TIMES VARIETIES OF PEOPLE EXISTED ON NORTH AMERICA

First people to settle in what is today North America
collectively are referred to as Native Americans or Indians
To speak of all Indians as all the same defies reality
Indian groups vary as much as nationalities of other Americans do today
a large variety of native thought and action were the rule rather than the exception
only a few statements can be applied universally to all Indian people
While their origins remain a mystery there are at least seven different types of Indian people:
• *Woods Indians* live between the Atlantic Ocean and the Mississippi River
this region had plentiful rainfall that fed many lakes and streams
forests spread over mountains and valleys
Woods Indians depended on the trees and animals that lived in the forests
in addition to fishing, hunting and gathering
they relied on freshwater and saltwater fish and shellfish
these natives developed a permanently settled farming culture

- as native women planted corn, squash, beans, tobacco and gourds
- *Plains Indians* live on rolling plain between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains there was enough rain for a thick carpet of grass but not enough to grow many trees Plains Indians were nomads and hunters who followed huge herds of grazing elk, deer and antelope that fed on the grass most important of these animals was the bison known locally as buffalo these animals provided the Indians almost everything they needed meat supplied food, skins provided for tepees, boats, utensils, baggage and clothing seasonal changes required mobility to follow the migrating animals
 - *Pueblo Indians* of the Southwest live on high, dry plain crossed by mountains and canyons what little rain that fell came in the summer and encouraged plants to grow they build large permanent house-like buildings of adobe (sun-dried clay) snow fell in the mountains in winter and supplied streams, springs and water holes some Iroquois Indians who lived in this region took up irrigation
 - *Seed Gatherers of the Desert* live in an even drier land in the parched basins and plateaus between the Rockies and the Sierra Nevada Mountains in Southern California animals were scarce and hunting could not provide an adequate amount of food families roamed the desert as women gathered berries, nuts, seeds and roots shelters were simply windbreakers or flimsy huts of rushes or bunch grass these native women excelled at weaving beautiful water-tight baskets
 - *Northern Hunters* live in the Mackenzie-Yukon Valley of Alaska and Canada they depended on caribou and other northern game for food, shelter and clothing in winter hunters tracked this game on snowshoes as their dogs pulled sledges (sleds) carrying their belongings Inuit Natives still live along the cold northern fringes of North America from Alaska to Labrador, Canada as well as in Greenland and Siberia they depended on Arctic birds, seals, whale, walrus, caribou, polar bear and other animals to provide food and animal skins for warm clothing they turned the fur toward their skin to hold in the body heat
 - *Coastal Indians* live between the Cascade Mountains and the Pacific Ocean in a region known for heavy rainfall rivers, streams, lakes and the ocean all were rich in fish, shellfish and mammals hunters added wild game to the fish supply for variety native women gathered bulbs, berries, roots and seeds to enhance their diet dense forests of tall trees grew in abundance giant red cedar trees were the most significant Coastal Indian men were skillful wood-carvers straight-grained cedar wood could be split even with crude tools skillful Indians built large houses by tying big slabs of cedar to wooden frames

large cedar dugout canoes were constructed for river, lake and even ocean travel
Coastal Indians wore little clothing

women wore fringe skirts and raincoats made from the inner bark of cedar trees
which provided protection against the rain
as the weather turned cold layers of animal fur were added

•*Plateau Indians* live between the Rocky Mountains and the Cascade Mountains
these natives were taller and leaner than the coastal people
Plateau Indians were cousins of the Plains people
they, like their cousins, were nomads and hunters and they also were expert at fishing

NATIVE AMERICAN PHYSICAL FEATURES MAY HAVE CHANGED OVER TIME

Indians were affected physically by influences such as climate, food and modes of living
thus, today Indians do not appear identical to Asian peoples

Race is an attempt to categorize a broad spectrum of skin coloring
and superficial physical features

in the mind of archaeologists race does not exist
tragically in our society today, racism does

THEORIES OF NATIVE ORIGINS EXPLAIN VARIOUS CHARACTERISTICS

One theory, the “Mass Migration Theory” focuses on physical characteristics
shared by Asiatic peoples and Native Americans

similar genetic markers of Eskimos, Aleuts, and some Coastal Indians

have convinced some scientists that most American Natives

descended from a single small band of Mongoloid people

physical features such as medium coarse straight black hair on the head

that when cut in cross sections is cylindrical

also indicate an Asian-Indian relationship

both groups of people also have a scant amount of body hair

brown or black eyes, broad forehead and rectangular, moderately flat faces

and straight narrow noses with a high bridge are common to both groups

both peoples are of short stature

they averaged 5'6" for adult males and 5'1" for females

both display a stocky body build -- adults were thick set and powerful in appearance

distinctive concave shape of their incisor teeth (shovel incisors)

and the lower first molars that has three roots rather than two

link these people genetically

Another set of theories attempts to explain cultural similarities found among isolated people

Native American, Mediterranean, Eastern European, Pacific Island

and North African people share different aspects of similarities

such as language patterns, similar tools and utensils

raft construction and pyramid construction (in Egypt and Central America)

“MASS MIGRATION THEORY” (OR LAND BRIDGE THEORY) IS THE MOST POPULAR

It is thought that during the last Ice Age Central Asian or Mongoloid people migrated eastward from Siberia across the Bearing Strait to Alaska in different groups no earlier than 16,000 to 14,000 years ago perhaps they were following the big game animals they depended on for food even then the Arctic Steppe (known as taiga in Siberia and tundra in North America) was a grassy, treeless habitat that stretched from Siberia to Alaska it was home to a surprising number of animals -- many now extinct such as mammoths, mastodons, camels, small horses, bears, bison, antelopes, musk oxen, giant beavers the size of bears, ground sloths the size of elephants, and saber-tooth cats they might have migrated from island to island across the Aleutian Islands chain or crossed a temporary land bridge or ice bridge that spanned the Bering Strait they may have come in successive waves over thousands of years in their travels they surely left a trail of litter, bones, broken tools and discarded clothing but today the trail is cold -- only occasional bones and stone remnants are found intact

One theory of human migration southward involves the existence of a narrow 700-mile-long ice-free corridor inland between the Continental ice sheets and Puget Sound ice sheets just east of the Rocky Mountains that might have opened about 13,000 years ago first Americans may have followed this route to migrate south from the Arctic region and then followed the Columbia River through the Cascade Mountains to the Pacific coast

archaeologists have found a great deal of evidence to support this theory remains of horses, elephants, and other large animals have been discovered in both Asia and North America that supports the existence of such a land link

Second theory of migration south suggests pockets of ice-free areas were located on the Pacific coast rather than striking out overland in the migration south

early people may have dwelt along the saltwater where food was more easily obtained these gatherer-hunters could have existed quite comfortably artifacts show humans and other mammals lived along the Alaska coast during the last Ice Age following the coastline would be a logical route on the journey south for boat-using people

IN SOME WAYS NOMADIC MIGRATION APPEARS TO BE COUNTER-INTUITIVE

Theories of a people wandering to North America and south to go against common sense at the height of the last Ice Age Asian people of Siberia would have moved further north

toward a darker, colder country of the Arctic Steppe
If this is true a natural “cold filter” allowed only the fittest people to enter to North America
they must have known how to sew jackets, trousers and foot gear from animal skins
they probably burned animal fat for heat, cooking, melting snow and light
Big game hunters were thought to be the very first settlers of the Pacific Northwest
they were descendants of Asians who were the most skilled hunters and survivalists
the world has ever known
they had to possess tools, knowledge, skill and courage to kill huge animals
hunting spears probably were very heavy -- used more for jabbing than for throwing
in the treeless environment, spears were probably made from long bones
micro-blade spearheads or arrowheads were found in Russia (August 1996)
similar in design to those found in North America
they used small flakes of stone fastened to bone handles for cutting
Arrival of humans coincided with a series of animal extinctions in North America
two-thirds of the large animals disappeared within 2,000 years of human arrival
but these losses could have been caused by changes in climate ending the Ice Age

VARIOUS OTHER THEORIES AND BELIEFS EXPLAIN CULTURAL SIMILARITIES

Theory of Atlantis is found in the writings of the Greek philosopher Plato
over 2,300 years ago he wrote the dialogues *Timaeus* and *Critias*
which was an account of the ancient thriving, wealthy, peaceful island city of Atlantis
Atlantis’ unknown location has been speculated to have been in many places
from Greece and Spain to the Strait of Gibraltar in Europe, to the Middle East,
to the Atlantic’s Azores Islands, to Great Britain and Ireland, Scandinavia,
and both North and South America
Atlantis was said to have disappeared into the Atlantic Ocean
after a day and night of fierce earthquakes and floods
most people consider Plato’s account a story expressing his hatred of war and corruption
people of Atlantis were said to possess advanced skills and knowledge in engineering
if Plato’s descriptions of sophisticated irrigation systems and canals can be believed
and we find the same plants and animals on continents thousands of miles apart
whatever its location (if it existed) Atlantis may have served as a land bridge
also, can it be mere coincidence that several ancient cultures seem to have
spontaneously acquired knowledge and skills that were seemingly
beyond their level of development such as the ability
to build a perfect pyramid and construct oceangoing reed rafts?
Continental Drift Theory notes the outlines of Western Africa and South America
appear to fit together like a jig-saw puzzle
some believe at one time North and South America, Europe, Asia and Australia
were all joined

evidence for the movement of continents on “tectonic plates” is now extensive geologists using modern scientific instruments and techniques have shown:

- North and South America are drifting westward away from Europe and Africa;
- glacial sediments in South America, Africa, Madagascar, Arabia, India, Antarctica and Australia also offer evidence of continental drift;
- satellite photographs and measurements of magnetism of rocks support this theory similar plant and animal fossils are found along different continent shores suggesting that they were once joined

small freshwater crocodile-like reptile fossils are found both in Brazil and South Africa land reptile fossils in rock of the same age exist in South America, Africa and Antarctica identical earthworm families are still found in South America and Africa

Kon-Tiki Theory was proposed by Norwegian scientist Thor Heyerdahl

he believed people from South America could have settled the Pacific Polynesian islands such as Samoa, Tonga and the Cook Islands

Heyerdahl organized a 1947 expedition using only the materials and technologies that were available to ancient people

Heyerdahl and a small team traveled to Peru where they constructed a raft, the *Kon-Tiki*, using balsa logs and native materials in ways illustrated by Spanish conquistadores

Heyerdahl and five companions sailed the raft for 101 days 4,300 miles across the Pacific before smashing into a reef in the Tuamotu Islands

they made landfall and all returned safely

if Heyerdahl’s theory is correct South American natives could be linked to people who inhabit the Pacific islands today

Lost Tribes of Israel is the belief that Indians are one of ten lost tribes

according to Hebrew Old Testament Scriptures the profit Jacob had twelve sons these sons fathered the twelve tribes of Israel (of Jewish belief)

ten of the original twelve tribes of ancient Israel were driven from the Kingdom of Israel after their conquest by the Assyrians -- 722 BCE (before the Common Era)

several groups of people were thought to be descendants of these “lost” tribes

British preacher Thomas Thorowgood published a book in 1650

in attempting to convert the Indians to Christianity he suspected they might be Jews

he argued they were descendants of one of the Ten Lost Tribes

Book of Mormon states a small band of Israelites under Lehi migrated from Jerusalem to the Western Hemisphere about 600 BCE

during the thousand-year history revealed in the Book of Mormon

descendants of Lehi’s oldest son, Laman, developed darker skins

but after their conversion to Christianity their skin color

ceased to be a distinguishing characteristic

a terrible war occurred about 231CE (Common Era)

Lamanites remained to inhabit North America

present-day Native Americans are believed to be their descendants
Indigenous Theory is the least imaginative theory of all
this theory contends Indians are a separate people who always existed on North America
they did not migrate from anywhere
thus there is no relationship that exists between North America Indians
and other cultures

FOSSIL REMAINS PROVIDE INSIGHT INTO THE LIVES OF ANCIENT AMERIANS

Manis mastodon site was unearthed on the Olympic Peninsula near today's Sequim -- 1977
land owner Emanuel Manis dug up part of a mastodon tusk
while excavating for a swimming pool
Washington State University scientist Carl Gustafson discovered bones
which rested on a raw glacial deposit
this animal died so soon after the last Ice Age had retreated that soil had not formed
the animal, estimated to be forty-five years old, had died of natural causes
it laid on its left side when it died in a pond that dried up over thousands of years
this carcass had been covered with sediment
this fossil has provided the only archaeological evidence of human hunters
putting a spear into a primitive elephant as a portion of a rib bone
with a piece of bone broken off had a spear point embedded into it
about three-quarters of an inch
this wound did not kill the mastodon
as the rib showed evidence of several months of healing
after it died the beast's massive skull had been wrenched loose
from the carcass and rotated 180°
bones had scratches on them and the beast is believed to have been cut up by humans
some bones were broken with a spiral fracture
which happens only when a fresh bone is broken
dating of twigs and other vegetation at the site indicated they are about 13,800 years old
indicating North America's earliest known inhabitants
may have attacked the ancient elephant
however, there remained some doubt that human hunters inflicted the damage
as the tapered bone fragment could be tusk point which had been inflicted in battle
later re-examination (in 2011) using new technology
concluded that Gustafson had been right

CLOVIS CULTURE IS DISCOVERED IN NEW MEXICO

Whatever their route to North America ancient people appear to be relatively peaceful
when compared to the later-developing farming cultures
Arrowheads and bone fragments were discovered by Richey Clovis

near Clovis, New Mexico -- 1932

gracefully tapered quartz micro-blade spear points with a flat base and sharp edges
had been flaked to make a tapered point

this was thought to have been invented by Clovis people some 12,000 years ago
Clovis people may have migrated from Asia across the Bering Strait in different groups
some may have followed the Pacific coastline as far as South America
ancient cave dwelling sites of Clovis people have been found near the Pacific coast
as far south as Chile in South America

PUGET SOUND REGION APPEARS TO HAVE BEEN ACCESSIBLE BY BOAT

Warming of the climate would have allowed boat-using people to reach Puget Sound
conventional thought is that hunting parties arrived by canoe from the north

following the Pacific coastline approximately 12,000 years ago

It is possible that ancient Indians traveling south along an inland ice-free corridor
next followed the Columbia River through the Cascade Mountains to the coast

it is known the middle and lower reaches of the Columbia were ice-free very early
new evidence suggests the northern end of the ice-free corridor remained frozen
between ice sheets

this would suggest it was not possible to cross into the interior until 11,000 years ago
or even more recently

Further archeological effort may provide better evidence of the origins of Native Americans

CLOVIS CULTURE WAS ACTIVE IN WASHINGTON STATE

Clovis people located in the Wenatchee Valley near the Columbia River 11,200 years ago

Moises Aguirre and Mark Mickles uncovered the largest cache of Clovis artifacts
yet found -- 1987

these objects were unearthed while excavating an irrigation ditch for an apple orchard
Scientists frequently visited the site and discovered many objects

such as flaked stone micro blades, bone fragments and tools for hunting and killing

these bone and stone artifacts include milky gray translucent points of chalcedony quartz
several of these are among the most beautiful examples of Clovis points yet discovered

MARMES MAN ROCK SHELTER HOUSES ANCIENT NATIVE PEOPLE

“Marmes Rock Shelter” is the oldest well-documented archeological site in the Northwest
this site had been inhabited between 11,000 and 8,000 years ago

Marmes Rock Shelter is the location of cremated human remains -- discovered in 1968

when the bones of eight people ranging in age from eight to twenty-five were found

these were modern looking people -- virtually indistinguishable from people today

they had a fairly short life expectancy -- forty years old would be considered old

also discovered was a slender stone needle that indicates people living in the rock shelter

could have made fitted clothing
Although the archeological site was so remarkable the site was listed
as a National Historic Landmark
(along with Chinook Point and American and English Camps on San Juan Island)
yet, congress failed to pass funding to preserve the site
although construction of Lower Monumental Dam on the Snake River
would inevitably flood the site
President Lyndon Johnson issued an Executive Order
that allowed the Army Corps of Engineers to build a levee around the site
when the dam was closed Marmes Rock Shelter was covered with water
within three days due to the seepage of thick layers of gravel
that had not been taken into consideration

OLDEST CLOVIS-AGE SKELETON IN THE NORTHWEST IS DISCOVERED

An almost complete skeleton belonging to what became known as “Buhl Woman”
was excavated from a gravel pit near Buhl, Idaho -- 1992
“Buhla” as she was named, was approximately seventeen to twenty-one years old
she was five foot two inches tall and in generally good health
how she died is unknown
Buhla ate primarily bison and elk and occasionally salmon and other fish
Buhla’s right cheek lay atop a new pressure-flaked, pointed obsidian tool
its position seems to indicate it may have been a grave offering
also found were fragments of what could be an awl or pin and a broken bone needle
along with a cut or engraved badger bone
Radio-carbon dating identified her as approximately 10,700 years old
this is one of the oldest sets of human remains found in the Americas
Buhla’s remains were returned to the Shoshone-Bannock Tribes at Fort Hall -- 1992
she was reburied by the tribe -- 1993
Other Clovis artifacts such as tools and knives also were identified in caves in Idaho
as were fossils of blood from bison, deer, rabbits and humans
how this culture eventually was destroyed remains a mystery

BRITISH COLUMBIA WAS THE CROSSROADS OF SEVERAL ANCIENT CULTURES

Climate heating and cooling led to sea level fluctuations as the coastline moved in and out
ancient native campsites may now be found below sea level or high into the mountains
No evidence has been found to indicate the earliest people on the coast had boats
but the Queen Charlotte Islands were inhabited more than 10,000 years ago
also, fossils indicate people lived along the mainland fishing and killing seals by that time
Studying modern cultures living in similar circumstances provides insight into these people
ancient people probably framed winter homes with reindeer antlers, mammoth bones

and tusks covered with animal skins
they may have erected these shelters over shallow pits
with earth heaped up around the outside for insulation
summer habitat was more portable to enhance the following of migrating game
there is no known evidence of large permanent houses
probably due to rising sea levels along this unstable shore line
Today's Namu on British Columbia's mainland in the vicinity of the Queen Charlotte Islands
is one of the oldest archeological sites on the British Columbia coast
marine hunters lived here from 10,000 years ago to about the year 580 CE
these people left a trail of cutting and piercing tools, micro-blades and polished stones
made of materials found in the region such as antlers, bone and rocks
large variety of tools indicated different tool-making cultures met in this area
no micro-blades have been found immediately south of Namu

PETROGLYPHS AND PICTOGRAPHS GIVE GLIMPSES INTO THE DISTANT PAST

Native Americans had no written language, but Indians nonetheless left records of their lives
symbols have been found at ancient sites in Washington State
although the significance of the artwork remains unknown

these may express religious ideas or record legends for following generations

Petroglyphs are carvings of designs and figures scratched on stone cliffs

in (today's Washington) most are found in smooth cliffs overlooking the Columbia River
common designs include: owl, lizard, four-pointed star, coyote, mountain sheep and elk
other important animals are also often pictured

most spectacular petroglyph is "She-Who-Watches" located near Wishram, Washington
in the vicinity of the historic location of Celilo Falls which is now covered
by the lake behind The Dalles Dam on the Columbia River

meanings of some of the petroglyph symbols have been explained to some extent:

- Coyote Face* -- found where the river is very dangerous;
- Eagle or Spear Fish Bird* -- carry prayers to the Creator;
- Elk* -- assures increased power for a successful hunt;
- Four-pointed Star* -- common symbol referring to astronomy;
- Goats* -- most common of the animals -- symbolize power to ensure a good hunt;
- Medicine Man* -- Shaman figure shows control of the Spirit World;
- Owl* -- symbolizes use of the surrounding property but not ownership;
- Owl with power rays* -- spiritual power which conveys prayers;
- Two people together* -- chief and common people share the river;
- Tsagalalal (or She-Who-Watches)* -- chief who was changed into a rock
but saw everything
- Water Devils* -- mark where river is dangerous and provide protection

Pictographs are ancient Indians drawings placed on rock faces

many drawings of the sun, moon, stars and figures resembling peace signs can be seen
sadly, a large number of historically significant pictograph sites

have been covered by landfills and garbage dumps

nine Indian villages and their accompanying drawings

were buried at the mouth of the Washougal River to meet the demands of modern life

Why cliff carvings and drawings found in Eastern Siberia and South Pacific Islands

are remarkably similar to drawings found along the Columbia River remains unknown

unfortunately, hundreds of petroglyphs and pictographs that could help answer riddle

were covered by water locked behind The Dalles, John Day and Bonneville dams

and have been destroyed

Modern technology can provide a means for archaeologists to glimpse into the ancient past

but technology is a dual-edged sword when it comes to understanding ancient cultures

it also has slowed our comprehension of the ancient world by destroying ancient sites

OTHER PARTIAL HUMAN REMAINS HAVE BEEN DISCOVERED IN THE NORTHWEST

Three vertebrae, a jawbone, and a pelvic bone that had been gnawed by a carnivore

were found on Prince of Wales Island, Southern Alaska -- July 4, 1996

they were dated at about 9,730 years ago -- not as old as the Clovis culture

Today about 2,000 human remains are being held in museums

they can be useful in analyzing diet, famine, diseases, physical activities

and can reveal genetic relationships

More and more scientific evidence shows that earlier Native American populations

appeared to share some features with Caucasians

Indians could perhaps be as closely related to Europeans as they are to Asians

SALMON PROVIDED AN ABUNDANCE OF FOOD FOR THE EARLY PEOPLE

Salmon five to six pounds each, probably sockeye, was abundant, reliable as a food source

and could be cured and stored for use in the winter

Good fishing places became centers of trade

salmon bones were found with human tools at Kettle Falls -- 9,600 to 8,900 years old

salmon bones were found at the mouth of the Fraser River -- 8,000 years old

ancient salmon bones also have been located in Stevens County, Washington

and at The Dalles, Oregon

KENNEWICK MAN SKELETON IS DISCOVERED BY ACCIDENT

“Kennewick Man” is the name for one of the oldest, most complete ancient skeletons found

bone tests have shown the remains to be more than 8,400-year-old

Will Thomas and Dave Deacy from nearby West Richland

attended the annual Columbia River hydroplane races

wading at the edge of the river at Columbia Park they stumbled across the skull

they picked up the skull and hid it in some bushes until after the race -- July 28, 1996
they notified the Benton County sheriff's office who informed the Kennewick police
police inspected the scene and noticed more bones in the shallow water

leaving the bones where they were, police contacted the county coroner's office
who asked forensic anthropologist and archaeologist Dr. James Chatters
to investigate

after ten visits to the sight Chatters managed to collect 350 bones and pieces of bone
producing the skull and an almost complete skeleton

many of his bones were broken into several pieces

Kennewick Man was determined to be five feet seven to five feet nine inches tall

between forty and fifty-five years old and slender

he had a long narrow skull, a projecting nose, receding cheekbones and a high chin

a stone projectile was found lodged in the man's hip bone which had healed over

Kennewick Man became the subject of an eight-year-long lawsuit beginning in 1996

between the federal government along with several Native American tribes and scholars

although the court case was resolved in 2004, the debate continues today

as of April 19, 2004, the 9th U.S. Circuit Court of Appeals upheld an earlier decision

by U.S. District Court Judge Jelderks that the remains could not be defined

as "Native American" under federal law

Kennewick Man remains are still under the control of the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
and scientific study of the remains was allowed to take place

Kennewick Man is now at the Burke Museum at the University of Washington

NATIVE CULTURE WAS DIVIDED BY THE CASCADE MOUNTAINS

Cascade Mountains were active volcanoes -- several mountains still continue to emit steam

Mount Saint Helens violently erupted May 18, 1980

Mount Rainier and other high Cascade Mountains had glaciers and snowfields

these, along with the rain forests, ensured Western Washington was interlaced

with rivers, streams and creeks of all sizes

fed in the in the summer by melting snows

and, in the fall and winter, by the incessant rains from the Pacific Ocean

Cascades also separated Eastern Washington from rain-carrying Pacific Ocean winds

which resulted in an arid climate that was hot in summer and cold in winter

with a far shorter growing season than along the Pacific coast

Cascades separated Washington's Native Americans of into "Coastal" and "Plateau" people

both Coastal and Plateau cultures existed along the water's edge as food was abundant

natives avoided the mountains, Western Washington's deep rain forests

and Eastern Washington's desert land which served as barriers

"Coastal (canoe) Indians" resided in Western Washington on the west side of the Cascades

areas of habitation occupied by coast natives included a narrow strip of land

running north and south from the southern tip of Alaska to southern border of Oregon
a distance of about 1,500 miles
Pacific Ocean formed the western boundary of the region
and the Cascade Mountains formed the Eastern edge
this area was not more than one hundred miles wide and much narrower in some places
seldom did the coastal people wander inland more than five miles from their villages
due to the warm flow of ocean air associated with the Japanese Current
this land is blessed with a moderately warm though rainy climate
which experiences only modest seasonal variation
some coastal rain forests receive as much as 160 inches of moisture per year
(more than thirteen feet of rain annually)
though some areas such as the Olympic Rain shadow (near today's Sequim)
received less than twenty inches per year
Coastal native culture centered on fish and water
living near the Pacific Ocean, Puget Sound and along rivers
fishing and gathering were the basis of life for these people
"Plateau (horse) Indians" resided east of the Cascade Mountains in Eastern Washington
in the area between the Cascades and the Rocky Mountains
the region is often referred to as the "Inland Empire" or "Columbia Plateau"
this region rises from one- to five-thousand feet above sea level
and is marked by mountains, hills, plateaus and basins
at various geologic times the region was subjected to enormous lava flows
which today form the basis of surface soil along with sediments and volcanic ash
climate is dry and sunny and extremes of hot and cold are more pronounced
snow is frequent in winter and conifer trees blanket most mountain areas
Columbia River drains a vast region before emptying into the Pacific Ocean
Plateau Indians lived a more nomadic life in the interior of today's Northwest states
they usually traveled from place to place on foot
(and on horseback after these animals were introduced)
large dogs served some tribes as pack animals
they carried goods in small rawhide-covered panniers slung over their backs
in addition to walking rivers and lakes could often provide transportation links
in winter, walking on snowshoes was an important mode of transportation
as on the west side of the Cascade Mountains, Plateau Indians avoided the woods
because they were filled with unknown spirits
Plateau native culture depended on meat and fish for food
these people fished, hunted large and small game and gathered available foods

LANGUAGES DEVELOPED ON BOTH SIDES OF THE CASCADE MOUNTAINS

Washington State natives represented at least thirty principal language groupings

most belonging to one of two principal “root languages:” “Sallyshan” and “Shakaption”
Sallyshan is further sub-divided into “Coastal Salish” and “Interior Salish”
Coastal Salish is the basis of language and dialects of Western Washington
spoken between Puget Sound and Cascade Mountains
including Lummi, Nooksack, Samish, Snohomish, Puyallup, Nisqually and others
Interior Salish is the principal language stock of the Plateau Indians of Eastern Washington
spoken in Northeast quarter of Washington
and beyond between the Cascades and the Rocky Mountains
by such people as Okanogans, San Poils, Spokanes, Colvilles, Pend O’reilles,
Flatheads and Coeur d’Alene Indians of Northern Idaho and Western Montana
many dialects were developed among Plateau people
but probably a lesser number of languages than on the coast
Shakaption was spoken by people who lived south of the Interior Salish speaking people
they ranged through Southeast Washington from the Cascades to the Rocky Mountains
this root language was spoken by natives such as Yakimas, Umatilla, Walla Walla,
Palouse and Nez Perce
Villages and tribes within a language group spoke a common tongue which unified them
although there were wide variations because communication from village to village
seldom was necessary outside of social events
each society spoke a dialect of their own making communications very difficult
quite often villages which communicated to some degree also intermarried
and usually shared the same territory
Several villages spoke a unique language of their own independent from the root languages
Chimakuan was spoken on the Northern Olympic Peninsula
these people included Makah, Chimakum, Quinault and Queets natives
Waiilatupan spoken only by Cayuse Indians in sections around present-day Walla Walla
Chinook was spoken along North bank of Columbia River
from the mouth of the river thorough the Cascade Mountains
An exception to this village language isolation took place along the Columbia River
where many villages gathered to fish salmon for their winter food supply
hundreds of Indians gathered at Wishram on the Columbia River to fish for salmon
some trade took place there during these expeditions
prehistoric natives traded skins for meat, roots, roots for fish, arrowheads for canoes,
stone implements for baskets and slaves for shell money
acting as middlemen in the trade between Coastal and Plateau people
Chinook Indians became rich and powerful
Indians needed a common language to conduct trade and ceremonies
“Chinook Jargon,” a combination of tribal dialects built chiefly from the languages
of the Chinook, Nootka, and Salish people, developed as a trade language
for people on both sides of the Cascade Mountains

later regular Pow-Wows (gatherings) were held in the Yakima Valley and at Kettle Falls where Indians traded horses, danced and gambled
As should be anticipated, languages reflected the natives' thought processes
for example, the native concept of "time" was divided into large units of measurement
a month "moon" and a day "sun"
hours, minutes, seconds, etc. had no meaning to the Native Americans
also the large variety of names for fish and fishing methods
reflected the importance of this food for the natives
Native Americans named significant locations and geographic features
Chemeketa (today's Salem, Oregon) meant "Here we Rest" or "Place of Peace"
as it was a council ground of the Willamette Valley Indians
Multnomah (Portland, Oregon) identified "Down the River"
Umatilla, Oregon commemorated "The Wind-blown Sand"
Chelan, Washington identified "Beautiful Water"
Walla Walla, Washington indicated "Where the Waters Meet"
Spokane, Washington designated "The People of the Sun"
Snoqualmie, Washington recognized "The Falls of the Moon God"

INDIANS BELIEVED IN THE SPIRIT WORLD

Native Americans believed they were always surrounded by supernatural beings or "spirits"
they practiced simple forms of nature worship today called "Animism"
they believed that things in nature, e.g. trees, mountains, and the sky,
have spirits or consciousness
and that a supernatural animate (living) force organizes the universe
animals and plants each have a spirit as do inanimate objects or phenomena
rocks, the weather, or the sky also were living beings with their own spirits
everything has a spirit
they also believed people have a personal spirit -- or, in modern terms, a soul
that can and did exist separately from the body
Spirits have the ability to interfere with the natural world
this conviction was so fundamental to Indians they did not have a word for their belief

NATIVE AMERICAN'S GOD WAS FEMININE

Native Americans thought of themselves as coming out of the earth, that is, the mother
Indians' God was a shadowy external power that pervaded the world
She was known by various names: "The Changer," "The Great Spirit"
and "Earth Mother"
She might be revealed in a robin's song, flash of lightning, beautiful scene, or revelation
She was neither all-knowing nor all-good
sometimes The Changer was foolish and selfish -- but She was always all powerful

Although ancestors and future descendants had access to the land and its many resources
The Changer was the real owner -- She allowed people to use the land
nothing must be done to hurt the earth or anger the spirits

NATIVE AMERICAN LEGENDS EXPLAINED THE EXISTANCE OF THE SPIRIT WORLD

“In the early time” the world was filled with great monsters which had magical powers
these monsters moved about and talked much as animals do today
these magical monsters possessed a personal spirit which controlled their destiny
“The Changer” transformed the ancient magical monsters into the animals, trees, rocks, lakes
and all of the other forms seen today
however, the ancient monsters kept their personal spirit
all things in nature were the embodiment of spirits -- “everything has a spirit”
these new creatures from The Changer were to be used by people for food and shelter
Indians believed all animals had agreed to die and to be eaten
they thought of people as cannibals
living on the bodies of their brothers and sisters: the fish and the game
humans had only to respect the spirits of the creatures
and return their own bodies at death to the Mother Earth to complete the cycle of life
Coastal and Plateau people believed spirits could both help and hurt humans
spirits could be good or evil depending on the person’s attitude toward the spirit
if the spirit was treated correctly and with proper respect
it would be beneficial to that person
if the spirit felt abused or slighted it would become an evil spirit for that person

RITUALS WERE EXTREMELY IMPORTANT TO NATIVE AMERICANS

Ancient Indians had a time-honored moral code recorded in their myths and legends
it has been said that Chief Seattle (1786-1866) was one of the last spokesmen
for this Paleolithic moral order
Modern society provides no rituals for young people today
so young people are forced to make up their own rituals
often in gangs and initiation rites
some believe all children need the structure of ritual to function rationally in the world
rather than being forced to establish their own morality
perhaps there may be so much violence in American society today
because there are no myths to help young men and women relate to the world
or to understand the world beyond that which is seen⁵
Rituals to honor the Spirit World were very specific and definite
as the natives had no written language these were passed orally to the next generation
Northwest Indians share their spiritual beliefs and customs through stories, songs and dances

⁵ Betty Sue Flowers (editor), *Joseph Campbell The Power of Myth with Bill Moyers*, P. 8.

to not follow the procedure properly was unthinkable as the salmon and animals could choose not to return and the people would starve

ABOVE EVERYTHING ELSE THE SPIRIT OF THE SALMON WAS MOST IMPORTANT

Salmon was not the only food of the people although it was the major item on the menu Salmon, like all living creatures, agreed to die and be eaten -- they became the food staple however, the spirit of the salmon must be respected to continue to receive this benefit at any time, salmon (or anything else) could decide humans were not worthy rites were necessary to avoid offending to the Salmon Spirit

Chief among native rituals was the “Salmon Ceremony”

whose religious nature was well defined

to assure the salmon would not become insulted and refuse to return to the villagers

First fish of the salmon run to be caught carried the Salmon Spirit

it became the center of the salmon ceremony varying only slightly from village to village when caught this salmon was gently but firmly held by the tail by the fisherman

before being gently put back into the river and held facing upstream

sometimes the fisherman’s thumb and forefinger were placed in the fish’s gills

this fish was to convey to the others of its species who followed

that this was the place where the Salmon Spirit was honored

Fisherman who caught the first salmon invited the entire village to a feast

only fern leaves were used to clean the first salmon -- water was unacceptable to the spirit this fish was cut lengthwise, not crosswise, using a stone or mussel knife

while the usual method of preparing salmon was by poaching in a wooden cedar box,

or smoked, that was unacceptable to the spirit of the first salmon

this fish was barbecued on a stake beside the fire to allow the spirit of the salmon

to rise with the smoke to a height where the spirit could observe

the thankfulness of the people

spirit salmon was broken into tiny pieces by hand which were given to all of the villagers

this salmon had to be completely eaten before sunset

so the Salmon Spirit could return home

but the host did not eat any of the first catch

Properly disposing of the salmon’s carcass and entrails ensured the spirit was not offended

heart of the fish had to be burned in the campfire

all of the bones and innards were saved intact

in a torchlight procession accompanied by dancing, chanting and singing

natives proceeded to the river where they placed the remains of the spirit salmon

into the stream with his head pointing upstream, symbolizing a spawning salmon

so the run of salmon would return a thousand fold

This covenant also existed between the human world and the animal world

an animal gave its life willingly with the understanding that its spirit would be respected

similar, if less significant ceremonies, were carried out for the first deer, first bird, etc.
unused portions of the body must be returned to the soil or to the ocean
as a “return to Mother Earth”

Even when white traders and trappers came into the region
Indians refused to sell the “Spirit Salmon” to them
for fear they would unknowingly clean the fish by cutting crosswise
or would boil the fish rather than barbeque it and displease the spirit of the salmon

EACH INDIAN WAS BORN WITH A PERSONAL SPIRIT (SOUL)

Every Indian had a Personal Spirit (or soul) which existed in the person’s head
Personal Spirits could and did leave the body and travel around the world exploring
these spirits could choose to seek new discoveries and insights
at other times the Personal Spirit could be stolen by an enemy
when this occurred, the native lost the zest for life
they became apathetic and listless
lost souls became ghosts which could become evil spirits

EACH NATIVE SEARCHED FOR HIS OR HER GUARDIAN SPIRIT OR SPIRITS

In addition to the Personal Spirit two kinds of spirits existed for people to acquire:

- the “Guardian Spirit” protected the individual from harm
it also provided a person with some basic skill such as basket-weaving, fishing,
hunting, berry-picking, carving, house construction or canoe building, etc.
and brought good luck in the acquisition of wealth and thus higher social rank
- the “Shaman’s Spirit” brought power over the Spirit World and the ability to cure illness
Shamans could be either men or women who possessed supernatural powers
however, they were most often men

During childhood old people told youngsters about various guardian spirits
so the child would recognize them when they were encountered
during the early teen years both boys and girls could engage in a “Spirit Quest”
even slaves were sent out to find their Guardian Spirit

Powerful spirits to people of high rank or to those who could endure the trials necessary
those who were strong enough and could fast (not eat) long enough
and endure many hardships might acquire a strong Guardian Spirit
and be elevated to high social rank even if they had been born into a lower rank

On the Pacific coast, any spirit was acceptable to serves as Guardian Spirit
young person may receive the spirit of an eagle, salmon, or cedar, or a rock, or a lake, etc.
everything has a spirit and may provide protection and good luck

For the Plateau Indians only animal spirits were acceptable as Guardian Spirits

IT WAS DIFFICULT TO ACQUIRE THE SHAMAN’S SPIRIT

It was possible to acquire both a Guardian Spirit and a Shaman's Spirit at the same time but normally the Shaman's Spirit was found later in life -- or never unlike the Guardian Spirit, the Shaman's Spirit did not leave the individual Office of Shaman was often hereditary but that alone was insufficient to justify the position people quested after the Shaman's Spirit just as they searched for Guardian Spirits an ambitious person from a poor family might try to acquire the power of a Shaman but a special sign was necessary during the Spirit Quest or a quest later in life that demonstrated a special favor of nature had been extended to that person Shaman's Spirit conferred special authority on the recipient Occasionally the spirit that was anticipated would not be found for instance, an initiate seeking Shaman's Spirit might bring back a layman's spirit or he or she might bring home a Shaman's Spirit even if their family members had been warriors of a lower class rather than Shamans or no spirit at all might be found during the quest "seeker" could perhaps acquire a Shaman's Spirit after acquiring several Guardian Spirits It was dangerous to acquire the Shaman's Spirit and the trials varied for example, to obtain a great spirit a seeker might dive into deep water perhaps the seeker would float down river on two logs while carrying a heavy stone he or she would dive into deep water carrying the great weight sometimes the seeker passed into unconsciousness and floated to the surface he or she would awaken on the bank of the river or the shore of Puget Sound having made contact with the Spirit World and acquired a Shaman's Spirit Indians who acquired the Shaman's Spirit did not immediately attempt to use their powers rather they would test their newly acquired spirit by assisting a practicing Shaman only rarely would a seeker immediately reveal he or she believed they were prepared to begin a practice as a Shaman many years of training were needed to gain the necessary skills to be successful it was not usual for an Indian to wait until after six or more spirits had been acquired after years of practice in curing as an assistant to another Shaman he or she would be recognized as a Shaman and move above their present lot in life Shaman's Spirit was so powerful that the seeker could never tell anyone all that had happened when the spirit was acquired during the spirit quest not even parents or friends were informed of the complete experience if the entire experience was revealed, another Shaman might poison the seeker Shaman could never become a village head chief, but could present an opinion at meetings normally the Shaman exerted a more powerful influence than even the head chief

A CEREMONY ANNOUNCED THE ACQUISITION OF THE SHAMAN'S SPIRIT

After years of learning the skills required of a Shaman an Indian at age forty or fifty might arranged a ceremonial feast where as many guests as could be afforded were invited

to announced he or she had achieved the status of Shaman
Many natives contented themselves with the ceremony alone
they never actually practiced as a Shaman
Each Coastal village usually had as many as three practicing Shamans
Plateau Shamans were fewer in number and were not thought to be especially powerful

SHAMANS COULD INFLUENCE THE SPIRIT WORLD

Human connection with the Spirit World was maintained by Shamans
shamanism required specialised knowledge or abilities
rather than information known to everyone
Shamans acquired their supernatural powers from significant dreams, trances and visions
especially following fasting and meditation
however, Shamans were not religious leaders or the clergy
members of the clergy are church officials who have studied to serve the community
rather, a Shaman is like a guide who has a personal experience with the Spirit World
someone who has been somewhere I have not and explains it to me
Shamans were the village's most powerful people because of their training and personality
Shamans could make contact with the Spirit World
Shamans could show their power by making a stone or a belt or other inanimate object
turn into a snake which moved about
Shamans used a variety of techniques to enter into trance states
while in a trance his or her spirit could travel into the sky, under the earth or into the sea
during their trance Shamans were often assisted by the spirit of an animal guide
while in a trance Shaman are able to contact The Changer, Guardian Spirits
or the world of the dead and use their ability to influence the spirit world
Shamans maintain a special relationship with the worlds and beings they visited
but when in a trance state facilitating communication between the worlds
they could become possessed by supernatural beings

SHAMANS HAD THE POWER TO CURE MENTAL ILLNESSES

Shamans are healers, storytellers, counselors and religious practitioners
they restored the patient to complete health through communication with the Spirit World
unless the spiritual ailment was cured the physical disease would never heal
Shamans believed there were two common causes of illness:
•intervention by the Spirit World;
•loss of the person's personal spirit (soul)
Shamans used rattles to summons up powers from the Spirit World
then they went into a trance to communicate directly with the spirits
when the Shaman awoke, the patient's family was told what had been learned
so the family could assist the patient to remain in a healthy state

Indians believed an enemy could entice evil spirits from the Spirit World to harm or kill a person

by inserting psychic darts and chords into the victim's Personal Spirit (soul)
this would result in pain where no wound existed

Indians believed part or all of a person's soul could be lost through emotional or physical trauma caused by accidents, surgery, childhood abuse, war, being in a natural disaster, divorce, or the death of a loved one
soul-loss could result in severe and chronic illness, abusive behavior, mental illness, depression, addictions, grief, coma, or a series of misfortunes
soul-loss also could prevent the sufferer from forming healthy relationships, or develop a sense that something was missing from the victim's life
loss of the soul also diminished a person's physical power

Shamans had a variety of treatments they could administer to their patients:

- “Dream interpretation” was used to gain insight into the nature of the patient's illness
Shamans listened to the client's dreams -- sometimes for several days

when the dreams were fully understood the Shaman would have the same dreams
and resolve the conflict to the benefit of the dreamer

this was difficult and required rigorous training on the part of the Shaman

- “Soul extraction” could be performed by a Shaman with the help of friendly spirit guides to remove the darts and chords and the poison inflicted on the patient's spirit
using a hollow bird bone, the Shaman would suck or pull the poison out of the patient's body

knives, a red-hot iron, or a bow and arrow would be used to scare the evil spirit
or the reflected light of a mirror could blind the malicious spirit

Shaman might temporarily absorb the evil spirit into his or her own body
to keep it from jumping into another person

- “Soul retrieval” could be performed by the Shaman with the help of friendly spirit guides
an effort was made to retrieve pieces of the patient's lost soul

or, if needed, the whole soul

this required a journey to the Spirit World to request the support of spirits, ancestors
and guides who would assist the Shaman

Soul retrieval was the most dangerous work of Shamans because they have to travel
for long distances outside of their bodies

they were vulnerable to attack by evil spirits and the loss of their own soul

some healings actually involved spiritual warfare as the Shaman struggled violently
to subdue or drive away the evil spirit -- occasionally even weapons were necessary

these cases were so difficult the Shaman would have to be aided
by a series of helpful spirits, ancestors and guides

SHAMANS TREATED DIFFICULT CASES OF PHYSICAL ILLNESS

Shamans are not doctors

doctors practice medicine -- the treatment of the symptoms of sickness and disease

Shamans spent their entire careers discovering and recording the curative powers of plants

they learned about the healing powers of herbs by watching sick animals

Treatments of sickness were within the powers granted to Shaman

each Shaman possessed a "Medicine Bundle" with tools made of things from nature

including furs, skins, bone, crystals, shells, roots and feathers -- tools that were sacred

feathers carried messages to The Changer -- eagle feathers were especially powerful

herbal remedies were gathered from the local environment

and sometimes were traded over long distances

cedar berries and leaves were boiled and then drunk for coughs

cedar was burned and inhaled to treat head colds

Shamans were successful in their treatments of physical illnesses and mental illnesses

as they played an important but risky part in healing others

In addition to curing the sick, the Shaman's role was:

- to bless the harvests of fish, animals, fruits, roots and berries, etc.
- to protect against hazardous enterprises such as hunting expeditions or a long journey,
- to find lost objects, attack enemies, influence the weather, and so forth

SHAMANS ALSO HELPED THE DECEASED TO REACH THE LAND OF THE DEAD

Shamans also could help complete unresolved business between the living and the dead

and help to give peace or healing to suffering ancestors in the land of the dead

Shamans could bar a ghost from a dwelling by blowing smoke from his pipe to chase it away

Occasionally, the dead could have a difficult time crossing over

to the comfortable and peaceful land of the dead

especially from places where accidents or disasters occurred

SHAMANS SPECIALIZED IN THEIR TREATMENTS

Not every Coastal Shaman was a healer of the spirit and of the body

some were communicators with the Spirit World and soul retrievers, or soul extractors,

some were dream interpreters and others were herbal healers

however, the method of the healer was less important than the service that was performed

Plateau Shamans usually specialized in treating the physically sick

although some faith healing was done

EVIL SHAMANS COULD INFLICT AN EVIL SPIRIT ON THEIR VICTIM

Shamans were generally thought of as healers, yet they also could be feared or mistrusted

even by their own villagers because of their supernatural capabilities

it was thought Shamans sometimes attempted to create business

by injecting an evil spirit into people

if many patients died the Shaman would be killed as a sorcerer
as an evil Shaman was far too dangerous to be allowed to live in the village
Shaman themselves could become ill only through the influences of another Shaman
this could lead to an ongoing war between the local clan's Shaman
and the enemy clan's Shaman
spiritual battles lasted for days or months and could result in death for a weaker Shaman
Shamans who routinely aggressively attack other people could lose their ability to heal
and even their status within the community -- sometimes they were even killed

SHAMAN COULD REFUSE TO PROVIDE TREATMENT

Shaman usually announced the price for their services before beginning treatment
and payment was made before treatment was begun
this payment was required to be returned if the procedure was unsuccessful
It was possible a Shaman would refuse treatment if the cure was in doubt
or if a Shaman felt he or she did not have enough spiritual power to cure the patient
the family would be told to contact another, more powerful, Shaman
on occasions when the treatment was not successful the Shaman came under suspicion
family members of the sick person or even the patient might invite several Shamans
sometimes a well-known Shaman from another village would be contacted
Discretion led the Shaman, when there was no hope, to hastily retire
if the patient died during treatment, family members could take revenge on the Shaman
Shamans sometimes went into hiding until the relatives recovered from their grief
however, the fact that Shaman often became very rich speaks to their success

WOMEN SHAMANS HELD THE SAME AUTHORITY AS MEN SHAMANS

Ronald L. Olson spent time studying the Quinault people
he told the story of a young woman who had decided to become a medicine woman
“She went into the mountains alone and fasted for ten days. Every day she worked at gathering tree limbs and branches until she had collected a huge pile of wood. On the tenth night she set fire to the wood and sat down to wait. As the leaping flames began to engulf more and more of the logs and give off intense heat, the young woman heard a mournful howl which came from a nearby mountain. When she looked toward the peak it seemed to sway. The cry came closer and the fire grew hotter. When she moved away from the burning wood a huge animal something like a wildcat appeared to her. The animal had a sharp nose, and its face was so long that it dragged on the ground. Approaching the fire, the animal raised its head and howled. The young woman was afraid and told the animal, ‘I don’t want that kind (of power). I don’t want you for a guardian spirit.’ The strange animal retreated, but soon the water of the nearby lake began hissing and boiling up, and many kinds of animals came swimming toward her. She was so frightened that she lost consciousness and had a vision in which the animals brought her

five kinds of spirits to choose form. She grabbed at the spirit which could bring back lost souls.

Curing illness by means of recapture of the soul was a common and spectacular treatment among the Quinault. When a person's illness was not a simple pain or an obvious physical injury, it was believed that the patient was suffering from loss of his or her soul. Souls reportedly traveled along the road to the dead at different speeds, those of severely ill persons traveling faster than those of people who were less sick. To find and bring back a soul on the road to the land of the dead, a medicine woman had to have a spirit who was familiar with the road.

When a medicine woman was attempting to cure she lay down on a mat spread on the floor and sang a sound she had learned in her vision until the spirit entered her body and she went into a trance. The young woman in the story above had been given some crystals in her vision, so whenever she entered a trance she clutched a crystal in each hand. When she spoke it was the spirit speaking through her. As she and the spirit progressed along the road toward the land of the dead, searching for the lost soul, the spirit voice described the various places they were passing including any evidence of the soul's having passed that way. Sometimes a search might last two days and two nights, depending on how far the soul had gone.

If the soul had gone beyond the reach of the medicine woman and her guide, she reported failure, but if she managed to overtake the lost soul, she captured it in her cupped hands. When she had made the return journey and recovered sufficiently from her trance, she poured the soul back into the patient through the top of the head. The pouring motions were repeated several times and were sometimes accompanied by gentle massage.”⁶

Among the services performed by Shamans for the public good was control of the weather this story is told about a Salish woman Shaman, “One winter the weather was so severe that all the livestock were dying of the cold. The snow was so deep that they could not find any grass to eat. So the people sought the aid of an old woman who had power over the weather. She sang her power song and then asked her petitioners to cut a gash in her head. As soon as her blood had fallen on the snow, a south wind began to gather force and soon blew in rain clouds. Rain soon fell and washed away the snow. All the people who owned livestock were grateful to the Shaman for saving their stock, and they all contributed to pay her fee.”⁷

COASTAL PEOPLE DEVELOPED CULTURES REFLECTING THEIR GEOGRAPHY

Natural ruggedness of the coastal terrain promoted the development of unique societies

Canada's Tlingit Indians formed the northernmost group of Coastal natives

Coastal people inhabited the area of Washington State south of the Tlingit people

Cape Flattery was home to the Makah Indians

⁶ Carolyn Niethammer, *Daughters of the Earth*, P. 150-151.

⁷ Carolyn Niethammer, *Daughters of the Earth*, P. 156-157.

while south of them living along various rivers
were the Hoh, Quileute, Queets and Quinault natives
in between the Tlingit and Coastal natives lived groups of people such as Canada's
Tsimshian, Haida, Bella Coola, Kwokiutl, and Nuuchahnulth (Nootka)
Puget Sound area before the arrival of Europeans and Americans
was one of the most heavily populated areas north of Mexico City
Mount Baker and its large snowfield in the northern portion of the Cascade Range
is within sight of the Lummi, Nooksack, Samish and Semiahmoo people
living in the vicinity of Bellingham, Washington
to the south lived the Skagit, Swinomish and Snohomish people
along the Skagit River and Snohomish River floodplains
and near today's Whidbey Island
natives further south settled a number of small villages
and fished the Green, White, Puyallup and Nisqually rivers
Duwamish people lived along the Duwamish River in the vicinity of today's Seattle
Upper and Lower Puyallup natives inhabited the Puyallup River region
Nisqually Indians populated the Nisqually River near today's Olympia
Squaxin and Suquamish people settled the western shore of today's Puget Sound
Each of these groups was further sub-divided again and again
to the level of village groups which composed their basic social unit
Puget Sound natives had no formal tribal organization among the different groups
rather, the people lived in very small groups
People generally took their name from their winter home⁸
typical village consisted of one and perhaps as many as three "longhouses"
which comfortably contained four to six families
villages were usually constructed at river junctions or along favorite fishing sites
such as waterfalls or cascades where salmon rested
before continuing upriver to spawn
most Puget Sound natives had both summer houses
comparable to modern summer cabins

MOST OF THE INDIANS OF THE COAST AND PLATEAU WERE COMMONERS

Coastal Indians seem to have a fully developed concept of a middle class of Commoners
who formed the largest segment of the population
vast majority of people both along the coast and in the interior fit into this category
commoners could become rich by trade or gambling or even conquest
they might hold a celebration to display their ability to destroy or give away wealth
but they could not become members of the aristocracy
Plateau people paid little attention to class distinctions when compared to the Coastal natives

⁸ Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest*, P. 6.

COASTAL INDIANS DEVELOPED A RIGID CASTE SYSTEM

Coastal people were surrounded by abundance, luxury and wealth yet they developed the most rigid cast system in the Americas
great emphasis was placed on the accumulation of private property
displays of wealth demonstrated the differences between classes of people
men were provided higher status than women
but both genders were grouped into four categories:
aristocrats, chiefs, commoners and slaves
on the coast, it was difficult to move from a lower class to a higher class
but if a person had a special talent or obtained wealth, they might rise in position

COASTAL ARISTOCRATIC CLASS WAS THE HIGHEST SOCIAL RANK

There appears to have been an identifiable elite class among natives along the Pacific Coast
each Coastal village had a few members who achieved the level of aristocracy
nobles claimed almost all of the village's property rights and personal prestige
Social rank among the Coastal Indians was determined primarily by wealth
members of the nobility were expected to be rich
members of the nobility must also appear to care little for material goods
inherited wealth and nobility were more significant on the coast than in the interior
property rights included the use of family names and crests, ceremonial songs,
origin myths and membership in religious societies
Coastal Indians were very aware of each person's position in society
wealth was inherited or won by skill, craft, or luck in some combination
personal prestige was usually based on family status and the ability to control wealth
honor and privileges in society were generally based on the ability to hold wealth
or the willingness to give it all away or the readiness to destroy it
to accumulate a vast quantity of goods which could be given away was prestigious
to be so rich as to be able to make a display of destroying wealth was very prestigious
misers were almost always looked down upon
Wealthy natives were aided by a powerful personal spirit
even the wealth itself was protected by a very strong spirit
other people of a lower status did not try to impinge on the property of the aristocracy
however, it was possible for a member of the aristocratic class to lose their exalted status
this happened most often when the person wasted his wealth or lost it gambling

MEMBERS OF THE NOBILITY HAD UNIQUE PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Members of the aristocracy were physically taller, stronger and better looking than most
their most apparent features were a narrow, long nose and a long forehead
that sloped from the nose to a sharp angle at the back of the head

this intentional head disfiguration was accomplished by “head flattening”
deformed heads were regarded as a mark of distinction and nobility
round heads were considered disgraceful and permissible only for slaves
Flathead deformation was achieved for both males and females
by pressing the back of the baby’s head against a padded cradleboard
an oblong padding of shredded cedar bark was attached to a slanted board
and pressed downward on the baby’s forehead
under side of the board was wrapped in buckskin
and the slanted board was held down with buckskin straps
baby’s forehead was compressed for about a year to flatten the skull
this produced a head which was wedged shape and peaked at the back
Chinook Indians and some of the other villages and tribes especially valued flattened heads
slaves were not allowed to flatten the heads of their children
except for favorite slaves who could flatten their first-born child’s head
Kwakiutl natives of Vancouver Island also deformed their children’s heads
babies’ skulls were bound all around with small cushions or bandages
to press the head into an elongated, bag-like shape
Head flattening may not have been as widespread as stories seem to suggest

ORAL TRADITIONS WERE CONSIDERED TO BE PROPERTY BY COASTAL INDIANS

Specific oral traditions belonged to each wealthy family
these accounts, which usually recounted legends of the family’s origins,
were told only by family members during special ceremonies
as the story-teller presented hereditary family symbols
and reaffirmed the family’s histories and traditions
Publicly owned traditions reflected more universal events
such as how the earth was created, or why the tides change
spirits of Thunderbird, raven, eagle, wolf, bear, frog and whale were commonly depicted
in carvings, basketry art and native dance to reflect their role in the saga
Winter was a time for storytelling about the Spirit World beginnings of human life
there were stories about the creation of each group of natives
and the foolish deeds of the double-sided character, the hero-trickster coyote

POLITICAL LIFE WAS UNIQUE FOR COASTAL INDIANS

Coastal Indians lived in extended families
social tie that held the natives together was a common culture -- not political organization
No formal political organization existed beyond the village
there was no concept of tribe among the Coastal people
there was no sense of brotherhood between communities as each village governed itself
An Indian’s loyalty was to his or her independent village

what might be thought of as Indian nations along the Pacific coast
were really just villagers or groups of villages who spoke the same language
whites later imposed the concept of “nation” to make treaty negotiations possible⁹

EACH COASTAL VILLAGE HAD A HEAD CHIEF

Every coastal village was presided over by a headman or head chief from the noble class
headman or head chief was almost always the richest man in the village
head chief and his children had greater wealth and more important names
than commoners

personal achievements played a lesser role in the selection of the head chief

Position of Head Chief was often inherited

when a coastal village chose a new leader, the basis was wealth

personal achievements played a lesser role in the selection of the head chief

usually the position passed from father to son

if the son had qualifications similar to his father

chiefs and their children had greater wealth and more important names than commoners

children of the chief usually belonged to the same class as their father

but sometimes a chief would marry below his social status

to a commoner or slave woman

in which case the children were thought to be inferior to their father

then a nephew or some close relative was selected to serve as head chief

if at the death of his father should the head chief's son was too young to assume power

the head chief's brother would rule as an advisor until the son was old enough

Sometimes two men would claim the title of head chief for a village

each candidate would attempt to give away more possessions

and the man who gave greatest display was chosen

DUTIES OF THE HEAD CHIEF INCLUDED MAINTIANING ORDER IN THE VILLAGE

Primary function of the Head Chief was to settle disputes among members of the village

head chief provided necessary law enforcement and order

he listened to both sides and determine who was in the wrong

he assessed fines and attempted to persuade the guilty party to pay

if the injury was an accident, the head chief determined the amount of the damages

to be paid

Coastal Indians' membership in the village was voluntary

head chief could be ignored is his guidance was believed to be unsound

those found guilty of injuring someone by the head chief

might choose not to pay the fine

in which case the chief would no longer provide his protection to that person

⁹ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*. P. 10

the victim or the victim's family could take revenge on the accused
Another duty of the head chief was to preserve and distribute the village's surplus
since the yield was divided according to rank, the head chief had an excess of everything
this was used to guarantee an adequate diet for each villager
regardless of social status
head chief took care to see that the poor were well looked after
head chief also must provide food for visitors and guests of the village
and provide feasts for significant celebrations

Resolving disputes between Coastal villages was also a duty of the head chief
each Coastal village was responsible for crimes committed within its territory
even though members of another tribe or village may actually be the guilty parties
war parties did not hesitate to do violence to strangers in an enemy's country
because their enemy would be held responsible by those who had been attacked
when necessary, the head chief attempted to make amends for hostile acts committed
by members of his tribe or village -- for example murder was not entirely unknown
this called for payment of blood money to the victim's family or blood vengeance
if payment was not made, the victim's family attempted to kill someone
of the victim's rank and circumstance in the suspected murderer's village
sometimes the head chief offered himself as a sacrifice to the offended party
the chief would be killed -- but war would be avoided

Head chief could lose his followers or be replaced
his tenure always was uncertain
if he did not maintain enough wealth, wisdom, courage, prestige, or power
if the head chief had only hereditary power and few other attributes

COASTAL SUB-CHIEFS WERE SELECTED FOR THEIR KNOWLEDGE

Most Coastal villages had more than one chief -- leadership was divided
in addition to the head chief there were generally four or five sub-chiefs
who were brothers or cousins of the head chief

Sub-chiefs served as activity leaders -- this was the person who was best at something
one sub-chief, the best hunter for instance, might assume leadership for hunting parties
for the Makah Indians, the Whaling Chief was an extremely important person
advice of the sub-chief was followed only if it was thought to be correct

Some types of sub-chiefs could be elected rather than assume hereditary succession
if the election result was close women and girls with a Guardian Spirit were called to vote

CONFLICTS DID OCCUR AMONG THE COASTAL PEOPLE

Battles were fairly common between coastal villages¹⁰
warfare among Coastal Indians was more a pastime than an effort to subdue their enemies

¹⁰ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*. P. 14.

usually conflicts between villages and tribes concerned petty quarrels, minor skirmishes and hostile acts of witchcraft

Puget Sound natives waged combat among themselves

a few peaceful villages only went to war to defend their collective honor
even then war could be avoided if the offending party paid for damages
to the offended village

they formed alliances and enemies among various neighboring villages
these political relations seemed to be more or less permanent
when one village raided by another old allies fell into line

A WAR CHIEF COULD BE SELECTED

If the regular head chief was not war-like, a war chief was chosen by the village
war chief was usually known for his courage, wisdom and leadership
rather than his ability to lead the fighting during the war
indeed, he might have responsibility for protecting the camp rather than fighting

War chief had supreme responsibility -- but he was expected to seek advice and consent
from the war council of leading warriors except in critical moments

War chief had no real military authority

he could only offer advice and carry out the war council's strategy

Strategy was planned by the war council

no Indian had to follow the orders of the war chief

but if a person resisted the will of the majority of the war council
the war chief might punish him by giving him humiliating work to do,
or make him fight in the front row or,

worst of all, send him home to the women, children and old people

After the campaign, the war chief was expected to give his authority back to the head chief
later this became a problem for whites -- after a defeat the war council disappeared
new native leaders claimed to have been in favor of peace all along

WHENEVER POSSIBLE PREPARATIONS WERE MADE BEFORE GOING INTO BATTLE

A very strong spirit, the War Spirit, could appear to both male and female Shamans

this spirit gave assurance that entering into hostilities would achieve a successful result

Coastal Indians preparing for battle asked the Shaman to determine the proper time to attack

Shaman announced the best day and time for an assault

but he or she could not intervene with the authority of the War Chief

Men held a ceremony and called upon their Guardian Spirits to assure success

they painted their faces black, sang their Spirit Songs and danced their Spirit Dances

if the Shaman predicted a man would die in battle, he did not go on the raid

the warrior was more important than the war

Shaman could go on a raid but they must fight as a regular warrior

Shamans never practiced medicine during fighting
someone wounded in battle could not be cured by the Shaman during the fighting
so the warrior had to depend on his own Guardian Spirit to heal his wounds

WARFARE WAS NOT USUALLY DEADLY

Attacks simply were raids of short duration and were nearly always local
raids were not necessarily deadly -- neither side expected total triumph
battles were fought more to save face rather than to achieve victories
Plunder and seeking prestige were among the most common reasons to attack another village
boxes, blankets, dishes, foodstuffs and ritual paraphernalia were all objects to be looted
if the owner of particular songs, crests, or rituals was killed,
ownership of the songs and ritual gear reverted to the attacker
these bloody acquisitions were one way that rituals and ceremonies
were diffused among the villages of the coastal region
Results of raids such as death in the village attacked, destruction of houses and goods,
taking trade goods and foodstuffs, territorial expansion
and retaliation for previous attacks were also incentives to attack neighboring villages
Vengeance often was generalized rather than focused on a specific individual or local group
if a community member was killed by someone from another village
community members might seek revenge against the offender's villagers
but rather than seek out an individual for retribution, the first person
they encountered who was a member of the attackers' village might be killed
satisfied, the revenge-seekers returned home
Revenge could be sought even if the death was apparently from natural causes
it seemed the goal was to inflict any death to balance the offended community's loss
only very rarely did territorial expansion or invasions of another village's fishing grounds
lead to combat
Indians did not like to fight at night because if someone was killed
that individual's Personal Spirit could not follow the sun into the Spirit World
battles usually were fought early in the morning
travelling under cover of darkness most raiding and war parties preferred to attack
just as the sun rose illuminating their way through a sleeping village
to assure adequate opportunity to reach the land of the dead
one common method of attack involved throwing burning bushes
on the village longhouse roof to drive the villagers out to be captured or killed
it was customary to call off hostilities after a few casualties had been suffered

HAND WEAPONS WERE USED BY COASTAL NATIVES

To inflict damage on the people being attacked, raiding party's unleashed darts or arrows
or they hurled stones the size of small cannonballs with slings

this assault could cut an enemy war canoe in half
however, most fighting occurred in melees which were noisy and confusing
combatants closed in quickly and fought hand-to-hand
Warriors carried weapons as diverse as axes, spears, knives and special war clubs
war clubs were the most common weapon
stone head with a groove cut in the center and a point at one end
was attached with rawhide to a hardwood handle about two feet long
some war clubs were made by covering a round stick with rawhide
this rawhide was extended at one end to form a bag which enclosed a rock
these clubs were about a foot long and attached to the wrist with a thong
war clubs often were enhanced with images of human faces, or bear or wolf spirits
Knife blades were of flint or obsidian stone attached to a wooden or bone handle
Bows were crafted by expert bow makers who spent hours walking in the forest
looking for a tree with the proper bend in its grain to make a good bow
usually yew wood or a green strip of pine, cedar, fir, ironwood, or vine maple
was chosen because of its great flexibility and strength
each bow was strengthened by curing, sharpened at both ends and painted
decorations were attached to the bow using glue made from dog salmon skin
which made the bow not only a powerful weapon but also a work of art
this glue was one of the greatest natural adhesives known
it could be used to mend split or broken weapons and even damaged canoes
bows were short and were developed more for hunting than for fighting
they were used for small birds, small and large land game and, occasionally, for raids
during battle few injuries were inflicted
as the bow and arrow was not an accurate weapon
bow string was made of sea lion intestine, deer sinew or hemp wound in glue
Along the coast, arrow shafts were slender -- these were made of wood similar to the bow
bone, flint, or obsidian points were attached to the blunt wooden shaft
or a wooden shaft was whittled to a point with no arrowhead attached
feathers from cormorants, eagles, or loons were attached to the arrows
for water hunting, Coastal Indians used waterproof California shag feathers
these arrows were used for both hunting and for war

PROTECTIVE CLOTHING WAS WORN BY COASTAL WARRIORS

Combatants around Puget Sound wore heavy coats of armor called “clamors”
made of multiple layers of elk hide or some other heavy animal skin
knee-length clamors were worn like a tunic
this armor worked like a modern bulletproof vest
it absorbed the force of spears or arrows or a projectile and diffused its energy
(these vests were nearly able to resist a pistol ball fired at close range)

when researchers recently fired stone-tipped arrows into elk-hide armor
the arrowheads fell to pieces)¹¹
Some Northern Coastal braves wore wooden helmets and armor
made of moose hide and wooden slats
Chinook Indians along the Columbia River equipped themselves with arrow-proof vests
sometimes small hardwood sticks were bound together and worn like a vest
for heavy fighting natives wore a long, stiff cylinder of elk hide almost ½-inch thick
hardened by fire and water that featured holes for the arms

SOME COASTAL INDIANS WERE MORE WARLIKE

Some Northern villages of Washington and British Columbia were more warlike
fierce Haida sea pirates from Haida Gwaii (formerly the Queen Charlotte Islands)
often became violent when an important leader died
it was said they wanted to send someone with their chief
and wanted to make many other people mourn
it seemed to make little difference to them who their victims were
even members of their own village were sometime attacked and killed
Haida natives traveled south in large dugout war canoes that held up to sixty warriors
these raiding parties frequently visited native villages of the Strait of Juan de Fuca,
Puget Sound and along the Pacific coast as far south as California to gather slaves
Chinook Indians of the Columbia River raided the Oregon Coast for the same purpose
Makah and S'Klallam Indians sometimes fell upon unsuspecting villages of Puget Sound
one famous fight concerned a whale which escaped from the Makahs
with twelve harpoons sticking in it¹²
S'Klallams, on whose beach it landed, refused to surrender the present from The Changer
or to even make the demanded payment
this led to a surprise attack by the Makahs who burned several S'Klallam houses
they made off with several enemy heads and a few captives
Modern societies are more warlike -- violence may increase with civilization¹³

TRIBAL ORGANIZATION WAS AN IMPORTANT PRECEPT AMONG PLATEAU PEOPLE

Because of the scarcity of food the concept of group unity was essential for survival
while each Plateau village was independent, the idea of brotherhood or tribe did exist
and linked groups of villages together into a larger political unit
Often no single headman led the tribe which was composed of several villages
power and duties were entrusted to several men, rather than to one
each leader seemed to naturally demonstrate expertise and talent in his area of concern

¹¹ *Canadian Graphic Magazine*, December 2013.

¹² Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*. P. 14.

¹³ James Lowen, *Lies My Teacher Told Me*, P. 93-94.

PLATEAU POLITICAL LIFE DIFFERED FROM THE COASTAL PEOPLE

In (today's Eastern Washington) leadership selection was generally based on ability and wisdom rather than heredity and wealth
although a type of aristocracy did exist for the Plateau people
class structure was only weakly developed -- no rigid caste system was present
however social status, such as it was, was based upon personal wealth
Plateau Indian political leaders played a diverse role that varied role from tribe to tribe
Interior head chief's duties were similar to those of the Coastal head chief
his responsibility was to keep the peace and settle quarrels in the village and tribe
he had to decide who was guilty and met out proper punishment
he had to be sure each villager had enough to eat and receive visitors and guests
To accomplish these tasks, he needed to maintain an influence over a wide variety of groups
but the Plateau head chief had less power to enforce his decisions than Coastal chiefs
head chief of a Plateau tribe was accorded more respect than actual authority
in the Interior, the head chief always faced the prospect of being replaced
by a brave with a following of his own who might call for an election at any time

SIMILAR WEAPONS WERE USED BY COASTAL AND PLATEAU INDIANS

Plateau Indian warriors' weapons included axes, spears, knives and special war clubs
Plateau Indians produced two kinds of arrows
hunting arrows were much like those of the Coastal natives
in addition, arrows made for the specific purpose of war were used
sometimes these were tipped with rattlesnake venom
In the Plateau region shields made of bison hide shrunk by steaming were worn
these skins were hardened with fire and pounded for several days

SLAVERY EXISTED AMONG THE NATIVE AMERICANS

Although motives for organizing and carrying out an attack on another village were varied
taking captives could be the by-product of any attack whatever the motive might be
Capturing slaves was a common outcome of successful attacks
acquiring young women or boys as slaves was a reason to raid near and distant villages
Even Indians residing within the same village did not have complete immunity from attack
village members of a different family group in the village
might take a rival family member as a slave
Indians seldom killed their captives

ANYONE COULD BCOME A SLAVE

Slaves originally were members of another village
slaves were ultimately the product of violence

they were the lowest rung of a class-conscious society
they were either captives or the children of captives
When a coastal village was attacked anyone living in the community was a potential slave
former rank in the community of the slave was usually meaningless
some of those taken would already be slaves who simply experienced ownership change
Captured village members who held important titles were sometimes ransomed
his people might send a great orator, usually from a different village, to offer a ransom
most often the orator offered two or three slaves for the noble's release
but many former title-holders spent their lives in slavery
When slaves were redeemed, however, a stigma of dishonor seemed to remain
rituals were performed to remove the stain of slavery,
but the humiliation of slavery, even for a short period of time, was so degrading
that the disgrace of social inferiority always remained

OWNING A SLAVE BROUGHT STATUS

Ownership of a slave was considered a mark of distinction and wealth by the Coastal Indians
percentage of natives held as slaves in the population of the Pacific Northwest
ran as high as one in four in some sections and perhaps even one in three
however, no one person owned a great many slaves
owners of ten slaves were considered very rich
Chinook Indians who lived near the mouth of the Columbia River
held more slaves per capita than any of the surrounding people
an average upper-class family owned two or three slaves
Peaceful people who did not raid neighboring villages acquired slaves from warlike villages
sometimes slaves were bartered or sold or they were won and lost in gambling
occasionally they were given away during a great display of wealth

SLAVES HAD NO RIGHTS OR PRIVILEGES

Slaves, like servants, performed many duties to support the noble class that owned them

- women slaves and children prepared and served food and performed laborious and menial household tasks that in other places were undertaken by free women;
- slaves ran errands and carried messages;
- slaves paddled canoes, fished, hunted and even in made war on neighboring villages;
- slaves made or helped make canoes, cut wood, carried water, etc.;

slaves often lived in the longhouse of their master and his family and shared their food
As a rule, slaves were well fed and treated in a manner that was usual for valuable property
but punishment for shortcomings was sometimes severe
Slaves had no prospect of socially advancing they could not own property
and were subject to the whims of their owners who had power of life and death over them
it was acceptable to destroy slaves on special occasions

Tlingit Indians customarily killed slaves to bury their bodies
beneath the corner-posts of the chiefs' house while it was being constructed
Washington State Indian Agent James Swan stated that when a Makah chief died
his favorite slaves were killed and buried with him¹⁴
if a slave had been purchased as a companion for a child
the slave was almost certainly killed if the child died

A great distinction in status existed in all ceremonial practices
slaves were rigidly excluded

generally, a slave could not marry a free man or woman
although James Swan noted Makah men frequently married female slaves¹⁵
children of such marriages seem to occupy an unclear social position
Men who had lost everything through gambling or fate could sell themselves into slavery
debtors could offer themselves to an aristocrat as a slave to escape their debt
voluntary slave's children, however, maintained their own status within the village
When Coastal slaves grew too old and feeble or sick, they were often neglected
or turned out to die
they might starve to death in the wilderness
then their body was unceremoniously thrown in the hollow of a dead tree
or some other out of sight place

STATUS OF SLAVES WAS USUALLY HEREDITARY ALONG THE PACIFIC COAST

Almost everywhere in North, Central and South America the children of slaves were freed
Children of Coastal Indians slaves remained slaves

Coastal people seldom freed their slaves or granted them equality
slaves could be sold at great markets like those held
at Celilo Falls and Kettle Falls on the Columbia River
on very rare occasions a slave could be freed or given away at a potlatch
or other ceremony
to show that their owner was so wealthy that he could easily afford to part with them
also, on very rare occasions a slave could become rich by gambling or developing a skill
but more ordinarily, if a slave boy found a powerful spirit
and became successful in fishing, hunting, or gambling
his owner claimed his catch, kill, or his winnings

SLAVERY WAS LESS COMMON AMONG THE PLATEAU PEOPLE

There was little class distinction among the Inland natives of Eastern Washington
slavery was far less significant among Plateau natives as few slaves were kept

¹⁴ James Gilchrist Swan, *The Indians of Cape Flattery, at the entrance to the Strait of Fuca, Washington Territory.*

¹⁵ James Gilchrist Swan, *The Indians of Cape Flattery, at the entrance to the Strait of Fuca, Washington Territory.*

often slaves were freed and were granted equality by their owner
many even joined the tribe of their captors and were treated as equals
Several Plateau tribes gave up slavery before it was outlawed by the U.S. government
Flathead Indians of today's Idaho gave up slavery very early on
San Poil Indians of Washington State believed in the equality of all mankind¹⁶
every man, woman and child was a member of the tribal general assembly,
any man was eligible to be elected chief but the office gave no higher social status,
meat brought back from hunting expeditions was distributed to all tribal members
as was fish taken at the community weirs
but private effort also was recognized
salmon speared by a man were his to keep
women had rights to their individual efforts such as harvested berries and roots
as were art objects a woman created
Okanogan natives of Washington and British Columbia and several other tribes
shared a strong belief in equality¹⁷

NATIVE AMERICANS ACCEPTED NATURE AS A GIFT

Water highways provided a system of transportation and a source for food
Forests provided an abundance of food in great variety
and raw materials for a highly developed woodworking technology
natural bounty provided building materials and artistic supplies
and firewood for cooking and heating in all seasons of the year
cedar provided the raw materials for housing, transportation, clothing and utensils
These natural resources were used to meet all of the needs of humans
they resolutely practiced conservation as they used only as much as was necessary
along the Pacific coast this was made very easy because of almost unlimited supplies

WESTERN RED CEDAR TREES PROVIDED A VALUABLE RESOURCE

Coastal people used the wood of several trees, but cedar was the most favored
cedar trees first appeared along the Pacific coast in significant numbers 6,600 years ago
Western Red Cedar provides a unique type of wood that is soft and light weight
it is easily worked using stone, bone and shell blades
and can be bent and shaped using steam
although easily split and shaped, cedar has great tensile strength
Western Red Cedar, second only to salmon in importance, was vital to the coastal people
indications of Coastal Indian woodworking even during the earliest times exist
splitting wedges made of antler were discovered in the earliest archeological sights
early Northwest Indian woodworking skills and technology were well established

¹⁶ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*, P. 19.

¹⁷ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*, P. 19.

between 3,500 and 3,000 years ago and remains unsurpassed in the world
cedar chips have been discovered which date back 3,000 years

Cedar bark consists of two distinct layers:

- outer cedar bark, rough and dead was peeled off the tree in the spring and summer when tree sap (fluid) rises in the tree
if the tree was not completely circled it would continue to grow
decay-resistant, aromatic outer cedar bark was laid on the ground and dried
it was used to line chests and boxes and as kindling for starting fires;
- inner bark is composed of red, stringy, soft, inner layers was gathered by native women after soaking for about two weeks the inner bark was pounded into individual fibers women skillfully twisted, spun and wove this material into long, thick cords
this material could be used for a variety of ingenious domestic functions
instead of cotton or wool to make dresses, cloaks and pillows
for making baskets, ropes, place mats and burial mats
fishing nets were woven of strands of inner cedar bark
when shredded inner cedar bark was packed around them
in baby cradleboards babies found the texture to be like talcum powder
for added strength inner cedar bark was often combined with other cedar parts
such as limbs, roots and boughs

FALLING GIANT RED CEDAR TREES REQUIRED SKILL AND PATIENCE

Large supply of Western Red Cedar trees was available
cedar contains chemicals which resist rot
objects made from it lasted for years and even decades

Western Red Cedar trees bark, limbs and roots provided a major source of raw material
first a huge cedar tree had to be found that was the right size and possessed the right spirit
natives were very concerned about the spirit world

Falling the giant cedar using carefully controlled fires would take days
a notch was chipped into the tree with an adze (stone chipper)
or was dug into the tree bark using chisels
heated stones were placed into the notch
charred wood was scrapped away with a chisel
additional heated stones were placed into the opening as the trunk was burned
wet seaweed or damp leaves were stuck above and below the burn
to control the direction of the fire
when burned nearly through, a niche was cut into the opposite side of the tree
in the direction the tree was to fall
once the cedar tree was felled, the tree trunk was converted into a log
limbs were chipped or burned away
top of the log was burned off to the right height for use as a house post, canoe, etc.

COASTAL NATIVES DEVELOPED ADVANCED WOODWORKING TECHNOLOGY

Cedar provided the advantage to the builder of being easy to work with:

- strait-grained soft cedar logs were easily split into planks along the grain
by using stone hammers to drive wooden wedges or wedges of elk horn
which were driven into the end of the log
as the log began to split, other wedges were pounded into the crack along the log
to spread the split wide open
finally, a stick was pounded deeply into the splitting log to continue the split
this operation was repeated over and over to convert the log into flat planks;
- shaping and hollowing the cedar log into beautiful canoes or bowls was slower work
the woodcarver bored a hole at each end of the area to be hollowed out
then split and chipped away wood in between the holes into appropriate shape
serving dishes and bowls were intricately shaped
into amazing animal and human shapes
- pieces of wood joined together by sewing or pegging which substituted for nails
holes were drilled in each plank with bone awls
strips of root or inner cedar bark twine were sewn from hole to hole
in countersunk grooves to protect the strips from wear
seats in a canoe, bentwood box corners, wooden dance screen boards
and other planks were sewn together to make beautiful and functional objects;
- some wood pieces were pegged together with wooden pegs
pounded into pre-drilled holes

COASTAL INDIANS LIVED IN CEDAR LONGHOUSES

Coastal natives need for shelter was met by an abundance of trees and ingenuity
substantial wooden longhouses gave permanency to coastal villages

Western Red Cedar longhouses have been constructed for at least 2,500 years
the earliest evidence of cedar planks being split dates back equally as old

Longhouses varied greatly in size, design, livability and beauty

they ranged from forty to one hundred feet long and fourteen to twenty feet wide
six to twelve families lived in each building

Chief Seattle's dwelling, "Old Man House,"

(known in Chinook Jargon as O-le-man or "strong man" house)

was located at today's Agate Pass near Squamish, Washington

reports of its size varied from 500 feet to 1000 feet in length,

it was about forty feet wide and nearly sixty feet in height

hundreds of artifacts from the site include harpoon points, gun flint stones, adze blades,
smoking pipes, glass and a bone pendant

Old Man House was burned down by the U.S. government in 1870

following the death of Chief Seattle (sometimes known as Chief Sealth)

CONSTRUCTING COASTAL HOUSING ALONG PUGET SOUND WAS AN ART

Longhouses were found nowhere else in America

longhouses and the great adobe pueblos of the Southwest

were the most outstanding native architectural feats constructed north of Mexico
it could take years of labor by tree-cutters and carpenters to construct a longhouse

master builders, believed to have special spirit powers, were aided by apprentices

Two varieties of longhouses were constructed along Washington's Pacific coast:

- shed-roof longhouses were long and narrow buildings

covered with a roof that sloped from front to back

narrow construction made the building easier to construct and heat

- gable-roof longhouses stood up to forty-five feet in width and 180 feet in length

these could accommodate six to twelve families

they were described by the number of fire-pits inside rather than the number of rooms

House posts served as the corner post where two walls intersected

a number of additional house posts were placed between the corner posts to support

long sections of logs that spanned the length of the building across the middle

these logs served as ridge poles to support the roof

house posts that supported the roof and walls were as much as six feet in diameter

when constructing a house post, outer and inner layer of cedar bark were peeled off

leaving the log's wooden core for use as a house post

standing the house posts upright was cleverly accomplished

as the posts were laid beside a hole dug in the ground with one side dug at a 45° angle

while the opposite side was dug straight down

several men lifted the top end of the house post

as the base end of the post was put into the hole by sliding down the angled side

until it reached the bottom

a short log was rolled down the sloping side of the hole

pushing the post into an upright position and holding it in place

dirt then was filled in to hold the post vertically upright

very large houses would have four house posts set in a line

with two logs placed end to end on the interior posts to make a very long ridge pole

Roof construction of both shed-roof and gable-roof longhouses required a great deal of skill

raising the ridge pole fifteen or twenty feet into the air was accomplished

by placing the ridge pole across a very large log like a teeter-totter

one end of the ridge pole was lifted the cross-log was rolled toward the other end

when the ridge pole was elevated to the top of the house post it was lashed into place

other end of the ridge pole was raised using successively longer temporary posts

that were used to lift the ridge pole to the height of the house post

once the top of the house post had been reached, the ridge pole was tied into place shorter posts, like rafters, slanted downward from the ridge pole to the top of the walls where the short posts were fitted into notches chiseled into the top of the house post spruce root strips were tied around the joints of the rafters and posts overlapping planks, like shingles, were fastened to the sloping rafter giving a sloping roof these shingles were pegged at one end so the shingle could be lifted with a long pole and swung open creating a vent in the roof for smoke to escape

Construction of the longhouse walls was equally clever cedar logs were split into planks that formed the sides of the longhouse after being split the planks were smoothed and finished with an adze made from a shell or piece of flint planks as much as eight inches thick ranged from three feet to five feet wide and as long as twenty feet were lashed horizontally to house posts in overlapping (ship-lap) fashion these were tied to the vertical house posts using twisted cedar twine rope or were pegged to the vertical house posts

Several doors were constructed in the longhouse regardless of type each house might have three or four doors openings were located on both the long and short sides of the longhouse partitions often extended out from either side of the door to protect the inhabitants from the outside draft in winter, houses had doors of cedar that could be closed by swinging on an upright post these could be barred on the inside by means of a horizontal log crossbar in warmer weather mats served as doors or the openings were left uncovered no windows were cut in the walls of the longhouse interior light came from glowing fire pits lined with stones or gravel

Longhouses could last for several generations passed by the owner from father to son an Indian who was about to die was taken outside of the house if the owner died inside the house it was either burned or given away when it was given away all people living in the house prior to the death had to move out if the person who died inside the house was not the owner, the house had to be vacated after a month or two the occupants could return

Chinook Indians living along the Columbia River fashioned their longhouses in much the same manner as Coastal Indians of Puget Sound except they used vertical cedar planks set firmly in the ground as walls depending on the width of the longhouse construction could be a high gable roof or shed-type roof created with a pitch sloping toward the rear of the building with either type of construction the roof was held in place with a long ridgepole

both types of houses were supported by house posts and crossbeams (rafters)
covered with overlapping boards and cedar planks (shingles) up to eight feet wide
that were laid over the ridge pole and could be pivoted to eliminate smoke
American explorers Meriwether Lewis and William Clark visited a Chinook Indian village
that was located near the famous Celilo Falls at the Columbia River Gorge -- 1805-1806
they saw houses were built six feet into the ground and one and a half feet above ground
each house measured about twenty by thirty feet and had a gabled roof
a door was located at one end
back half of each house provided storage for dried fish, berries and other possessions
front half of the house nearest the door was the living area
each house was shared by three or four families

SEVERAL FAMILIES SHARED THE INSIDE OF THE LONGHOUSE

Storage containers inside the longhouse were placed along a line
separating neighbors from each other
wooden chests, boxes and baskets used for storing food, supplies and personal property
were placed end to end
cedar chests were constructed of a one single board which made all four sides
cedar boxes were made of split cedar boards laced together used for storage
baskets were made of grasses and reeds
many containers were works of art with carvings or designs worked into the construction
Interior of longhouses along Puget Sound often were divided into rooms at night for privacy
natives used a portable partition to provide a sight barrier from those sharing the house
blankets were often hung between families
sometimes mats made from cedar bark, grasses, reeds, or cattails were used
Along the wall of their apartment each family had its sleeping area
which consisted of wide shelves against the walls that served as beds at night
these were constructed about two and one-half feet from the floor
in front of the sleeping shelf were other platforms about a foot high
that were used as seats, settees or storage places during the day
slaves usually slept on the lower platforms
sometimes planks on the floor covered with mats were used instead of platforms
above the sleeping platforms were storage shelves
usually slanted downward in toward the wall
ladders were used to reach these storage areas
dried provisions were stored in baskets there for the winter
extra blankets were also stored there in the summer
Fire pits were dug in the floor and surrounded by stones for use as a fireplace and cooking
fires were arranged not in the middle of the interior space but rather nearer the walls
there was no chimney -- smoke followed the tapering roof line up toward a roof vent

center area of the longhouse was usually reserved as a passageway
used to get from one end of the dwelling to the other
Floors were packed dirt that was often covered with sand or cattail mats
sometimes mats woven from the soft inner bark of cedar trees served as carpets
When a couple had enough children to crowd the family apartment
the son, when old enough, was given a separate section of the house as his own
if the family was wealthy enough, they could build their own longhouse
Poor natives lived in a lien-to rather than in the longhouse

COASTAL VILLAGES ON PUGET SOUND ALL FOLLOWED A SIMILAR PATTERN

Much of the Pacific Northwest was uninhabited but not unclaimed or unexplored
permanent villages were occupied during the winter
one village could be composed of from three to five larger longhouses together
Usually the village was built on one street
each village, when possible, had a feast house five times the size of a normal longhouse
this building, between one hundred to two hundred feet long, was able to shelter
several hundred people for major social events such as celebrations and feasts
some feast houses were also used as dwellings to house up to thirty families
but this was thought to be a poor village
several kinds of smaller structures faced the water and generally were in a single row
these were always built on the shore of the sound or along rivers and creeks
small "lein-tos" housed the poor
canoe houses served as storage sites for boats and personal belongings
and also provided posts for additional carving opportunities
every family had a fish-drying rack suspended from a crossbeam

OZETTE VILLAGE PROVIDES INSIGHT INTO COASTAL NATIVE VILLAGE LIFE

Ozette Indian village was occupied by Makah people along the Pacific Ocean
on the Olympic Peninsula near the town of Neah Bay, Washington
Ozette may date back farther than the Marmes Rock Shelter site
which was occupied between 11,000 and 9,800 years ago
according to radiocarbon dating part of Ozette was engulfed by a catastrophic mud slide
some five hundred years ago -- around 1560
Washington State University archeologist Dr. Richard Daugherty learned of the site
and led archeologists to dig test pits in 1966 and 1967
high tides during the winter of 1970 washed even more artifacts from where they had lain
Dr. Daugherty and his team investigated several Makah houses caught under the mudslide
Daugherty became director of the Ozette archeological sight
he pioneered wet sight work -- 1970-1981
pressurized ocean water was used to slowly remove the mud from buried houses

and exterior midden (refuse materials) where household items were discarded
Dr. Daugherty preserved Ozette's wooden artifacts
by soaking them in huge vats of Carbowax
some artifacts, especially those made of hard woods because of their small pores
had to soak for years to preserve them
More than 55,000 artifacts from all aspects of ancient tribal life were excavated
these were cleaned, identified with Makah names, cataloged, preserved
and stored or displayed
among these items are beautifully carved house boards,
an elaborate whale saddle or dorsal fin inlaid with seven hundred sea otter teeth,
numerous styles and sizes of baskets and boxes,
clothing, cradle boards, mats, hats, looms and toys,
fishing, sealing and whaling equipment, ceremonial gear and even metal tools
it is speculated that the metal came from shipwrecks or trade networks
many of these artifacts can be seen today in the in the Makah Museum
at the Makah Cultural and Research Center in Neah Bay
ancestral remains were reinterred out of respect for these people
and in keeping with cultural beliefs about death
Ozette village has been recognized as one of the richest archaeological resources in the world
and has inspired a cultural renaissance for the Makah people
Other possible archeological sites have been identified on San Juan Island and at Enumclaw
but funding is presently not available to investigate these locations

PLATEAU NATIVE HOUSES OF EASTERN WASHINGTON SHOW GREAT VARIATION

Lacking forests, at first the Plateau tribes lived and camped in caves and under rock shelters
later they dug permanent "Pit houses" in the ground which were used in winter
Pit Houses varied in style and design by the location of the tribe of builders
usually these circular in-ground winter houses were located in sheltered valleys
they varied in length from twenty feet to one hundred-fifty feet
interior was excavated to form a round pit five or six feet deep
and ten to fifteen feet wide
roof was placed above the ground on roof poles sloping from the ground
up to a ridge pole that supported a flat, pointed or conical shaped roof
roof poles were covered with planks if they were available
or, if necessary, they were covered with mats
the roof was blanketed with grass or dirt to provide insulation from the cold
a hole in the roof was left open for the smoke
entrance into the house was by way of the smoke-hole down a ladder or center-pole
fire pit provided warmth in winter and the dirt walls provided insulation to retain the heat
rooms were not partitioned by sight barriers

but each family had its space to keep its property and provisions
Later still, long open lodges which became popular with the Plateau people were developed
in winter the lodge could be covered with saplings, grass, tulle mats and earth
Also common in the interior were conical tepees borrowed from the Plains Indians
these were quickly and easily set up and dismantled
Plateau tribes built a “Sweat Lodge” to be used for purification ceremonies and healing
sweat lodges were about seven feet long, six feet wide and four feet high
an oval roof of willows was covered with grass and earth to keep the heat in
entrance to the sweat lodge was covered with blankets and mats
outside the door a fire was built to heat lava stones that were rolled into the sweat lodge
these stones were considered by the Plateau natives to be their oldest living relatives
heated stones were placed in a slight depression in the floor
and covered with water to create steam
usually only one person at a time occupied the lodge
bather shut himself or herself in the sweat lodge with a number of hot stones
steam heat removed toxins from the body, made the heart pump more blood
and caused the native to experience visions
sweat lodges were always built beside a creek or river
bathers, when perspiring freely, could immediately plunge into the cold water
Plateau people believed sweat lodges brought balance and health to the spirit, mind and body
the lodge could bring clarity to a problem or reconnect the native with the Spirit Word
sweat lodges held very strong spirits which could aid the worshipper
to contact his or her Guardian Spirit and to call upon helpful spirits

PLATEAU INDIANS ALSO WERE MOBILE DURING THE WARMER MONTHS

Conditions were less agreeable than along the coast -- food was less plentiful
meeting the challenges of everyday life was more difficult in the Interior
this forced Plateau people to be semi-nomadic to find and gather adequate food
they moved frequently in search of food and game during the warm season
which prevented these tribes from living permanently in one house
life was sparser for these people
Summer houses were portable mat-covered or rush-covered tents
or single or double lean-tos
Plateau people constructed a semi-permanent camp of long and rectangular huts
made of framing poles placed at the corners of the shelter
walls were made of grass, mats, blanket or animal robe
stretched across the rectangle of the building poles
one corner was left untied to serve as the door
gaps between the wall and corner posts allowed breezes to enter
blankets or mats served for the roof

as there is little rain in Eastern Washington in the summer
During the summer, some Interior tribes used teepees adopted from the Plains Indians
frame of the teepee consisted of about ten long poles pointed at the lower end
these were driven into the ground and lashed together with thongs near the top
walls of the shelter were made of reed mats stitched together
or dressed bison hides sewed together stretched over the frame
this lodge could easily be set up by women in a few minutes
some Indian women decorated their tepees with drawings of animals or symbols
When traveling travois (sleds pulled by animals) were used
to carry their belongings and the harvest they collected
these consisted of two long poles that were of unequal length
to prevent both sides of the travois from bouncing along the ground at the same time
woven mats were lashed between the poles to hold the cargo
before the arrival of the horse in Eastern Washington,
dogs were used to carry possessions

WATER UNIFIED THE COASTAL AND PLATEAU PEOPLE OF WASHINGTON

While the Pacific Ocean and Puget Sound provided both food and transpiration
for the Coastal people
rivers and lakes provided food and transportation for people
on both sides of the Cascades
Indians, with the exception of people who lived far inland on the slopes of the mountains,
stayed by the water and used canoes to travel on the rivers, lakes and ocean to get around
rivers were so important to travel that there were almost no trails through the forests
Indians along the Pacific coast seldom traveled more than five miles inland from their village
fear of unknown spirits living in the dense woods ruled out most overland travel
however, some trails led to the beach or to berry picking patches
other trails were developed by migrating animals
Because the rivers were so important it was natural that people kept track of each other
according to river systems or drainages they populated
suffix “amish” found in many of the tribal names
indicated they were the “people of” a specific river system
(for example, Swinomish, Stilaguamish, Snohomish, Squamish and Duwamish)

INDIAN LEGEND OF CANOE OWNERSHIP

Selected Western Red Cedar logs were carved into beautiful and seaworthy dugout canoes
large cedar trees grew in the deep forests many miles from the villages
obviously no modern equipment such as saws or axes or any metal tools were available
not even draft animals were available to move the logs
nor were there roads over which a tree fifty feet log could be carried

there remains the question of how these enormous logs were delivered to the village
An Indian legend attempts to answer the question of how logs were transported
in some coastal villages ownership of a canoe was a religious responsibility¹⁸
to acquire a canoe, a young man had to fast and meditate in the wilderness for days
during this time, he sang a song as he walked through the woods
asking a tree to bless him with the ownership of a canoe
if his prayers were answered a tree would choose him to be a canoe owner
and would sing back to him
when the young man heard the tree singing, he made camp at the bottom of the tree
there he stayed while he learned of all of the responsibilities of canoe ownership
when the tree was satisfied that the young man was worthy of having a canoe
it would teach him how to fell the tree and how to trim its branches
next the tree would teach the young man a special song to sing
as he returned to his village followed down the mountainside by the tree
at the village the tree would be made into a canoe

ALL OF THE VILLAGERS WORKED TO CONSTRUCT A DUGOUT CANOE

Canoe carving was a highly-developed community skill
found nowhere else in North America
carving a canoe from a single Western Red Cedar log was a community project
it took months to form a canoe and the Coastal Indians excelled in canoe construction
Using wooden wedges, the top portion of the cedar log was split away
once split the cedar log was hollowed out by burning
small controlled fires were built in the log to burn away the inner wood
natives patiently hacked and chipped out the charred wood inside of the canoe
using a hand adze (axe) and other tools made of bone, horn, wood and stone
as the canoe slowly took shape
Indians shaped the outside of the canoe using wedges from elk horn
sides of the canoe were sanded with dogfish skin or, if it was available, shark skin
a series of curved grooves were cut along the length of the outside of the canoe
these were designed to turn aside waves that struck the canoe in a sequence
they were considered an engineering triumph by everyone who saw them
occasionally holes were drilled in the canoe bottom and sides with a sharp hand awl
to measure the thickness using the knuckles of one or two fingers
thickest part of the canoe was at the bottom
these holes were later plugged and sealed with sawdust and pitch
Cedar log was widened and stretched to a width of nearly six feet using steam
inside of the log was filled with water and heated stones were added to generate steam
sides of the log were steamed until the wood softened and became pliable

¹⁸ Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest*, P. 20

wedged pieces of yew wood of proper lengths were placed between the gunwales (sides) at intervals across the canoe to spread and hold the top to make the canoe wider and give the proper shape

the wide canoe that resulted provided better stability and room to hold more goods

Both ends of the canoe were made from separate pieces of hard wood

front of the canoe featured a prow raised above the water in the shape of a “wolf’s head”

vertical stern of the canoe was tapered

sometimes a canoe’s stern was raised above the water

bow and stern were both attached to the canoe body with pegs

craftsman spun a piece of bone or awl between the palms of his hands until it drilled a hole through the wood

when holes in the canoe and ends were lined up, wooden pegs were driven through

these holes were later sealed using sawdust and glue made from dogfish skin

Finished canoes were beached stern first to keep the bow in the water

canoes shipped very little water except in great storms

and even then could be emptied with a bailer

CANOE PROVIDE COASTAL PEOPLE A MEANS TO TRAVEL LONG DISTANCES

Coastal villagers traveled the coast of Washington and British Columbia with great skill a thousand miles and more were traveled by raiding parties to steal and capture slaves

sails made of wooden slats or cedar bark mats occasionally were rigged for the largest canoes

but most often the Indians propelled their canoes with paddles

Canoes varied greatly in length according to their function

they ranged from five- or six-foot vessels used for ferrying across a river to great oceangoing canoes fifty and more feet in length:

- lightweight women’s and children’s crafts were maneuverable;
- one- and two-man canoes used in the shallow parts of lakes could be used to carry goods or for fishing;
- middle-sized cargo canoes were twenty-eight to forty feet long were somewhat shorter and much broader than oceangoing canoes manned by an average crew of eight they were used for carrying freight on rivers a finished cargo canoe could carry a great deal of material wooden boxes for carrying goods were made with slanting sides to enable them to fit almost exactly into the canoe bottoms these Indian canoes were probably the first container ships in the world;
- large canoes -- fifty feet long and longer were used for war and whaling sometimes canoes carried a crew of twenty-five or more braves whaling canoes were very sleek and designed for fast, silent travel over the waves

PLATEAU NATIVES OF EASTERN WASHINGTON USED CANOES AND RAFTS

Inland canoes were crudely constructed dugouts or bark vessels with a blunt nose that were used primarily on lakes
canoes were poled in shallow water -- while in deeper water they were paddled
when used on rivers or streams, the canoe was often left at the downriver destination
little time or energy was dedicated to their construction
these were not the works of art as were the canoes of the Coastal people
Rafts of willows and rushes were used when crossing streams
these were often unsafe but Indians were very good swimmers
many Inland Empire tribes who live on fish had no canoes at all and traveled by walking

COASTAL AND PLATEAU WOMEN WERE BUSY DURING THE SUMMER MONTHS

On both sides of the Cascade Mountains camas root, similar to a potato, was dug with a sharp stick in June and July
Camas root was tasty and could be eaten raw immediately
or boiled, steamed or baked to be stored for the winter
twenty or thirty bushels of roots were peeled and heaped on the grass in a conical pile
these were covered with grass and allowed to cure
then a hole ten feet in diameter and about three feet deep was dug
this was lined with dry wood on which heated small stones were laid
earth and grass thrown over the stones
camas root was placed into the hole and a fire was built on top of the mound
this was kept burning throughout the night
as the roots turned black the cooked camas root imparted a sweet flavor
sometimes after they were cooked, they were dried whole or ground into powder
ground root was made into dough that was rolled into loaves of eight to ten pounds
these were put through a steaming process and made into cakes
camas root cakes were smoked or dried in the sun
camas root cakes could be eaten with seal oil or fish oil
Pemmican, dried meat pounded into paste and mixed with animal fat, dried berries or fruit was pounded into a long basket holding about eighty pounds for use in the winter
pemmican provided a variation to the Coastal natives' winter diet of cured salmon jerky
pemmican was an important food for Coastal and Plateau Native Americans alike

FISHING WAS THE MOST IMPORTANT ACTIVITY OF THE COASTAL NATIVE

Salmon run was anxiously awaited and gravely celebrated
as fish was a staple of the Coastal Indian diet and salmon was the principal fish
salmon season lasted from spring until November
Salmon, depending on the species, spent between three and seven years at sea
before they returned to the spawning grounds along the gravel beds in freshwater streams

five kinds of salmon were caught in the order of the seasonal runs:

- king salmon (also are known as Chinook and Tyee);
- humpback salmon (pink);
- silver salmon (Coho);
- sockeye salmon (blueback, red);
- dog salmon (chum, Keta);
- steelhead (actually a large trout)

each species of salmon returned to a specific river (and thus to an Indian village)
at differing times of the year

Because of their importance to the diet of Native Americans

salmon to be caught and eaten, were always treated with the utmost reverence and respect

COASTAL AND PLATEAU PEOPLE MOVED TO FISHING CAMPS IN THE SUMMER

Coastal people, when the salmon run began in the summer, moved out of their villages
which they had occupied during winter and early spring
they moved into summer villages large and small

located along the salt water beaches and along the rivers

outer planks of their permanent houses were removed, loaded into canoes,

and were taken to their summer settlements only to be brought back in the fall

Summertime for the coastal Indians resembled vacation time in the Pacific Northwest today

everyone tried to get away to a quiet place to relax and engage in frequent celebrations

there were many large gatherings of people from the various villages in the summertime

this was a time for large feasts and visiting

marriages were arranged and business transacted

between families of different villages

fishing stations were, for the most part, hereditary

various people would share even the lengths of streams

Coastal men spent much of their time fishing at their summer fishing camp

Coastal women, between their efforts at summer's gathering,

brought their families to join the men in their temporary fishing camps

it was the duty of the women at all fisheries to clean and dry or smoke the catch

after a few hours in the sun, skins were easily removed from the fish

flesh separated from the bones was mashed as finely as possible

this was spread out on frames covered with matting

until it was dried by the sun and wind

salmon also was smoked when smokehouses were constructed

COASTAL FISHING TECHNIQUES VARIED BY WATER CONDITIONS AND SIZE

At least five different fishing techniques were used depending on where fish were harvested:

- freshwater lakes provided an opportunity to catch a variety of fish to use as food;

- rivers, streams and creeks that drained into various inlets and bays of the “Salish Sea” (Strait of Georgia, the Strait of Juan de Fuca, and Puget Sound) were another source for food;
- waters of the shallow bays, estuaries and tideland flats provided fish and shellfish;
- Salish Sea itself was composed of considerably deeper and broader bodies of water than the shallow bays and was still another source of food;
- Pacific Ocean, almost boundless in length and depth, provided additional fishing places

Freshwater lakes offered the opportunity to catch a variety of fish residing there but lakes also provided access to catch salmon as they entered on their way to spawn

Indians gathered where a river or stream entered a lake to spear or gaff the salmon (a gaff is about six feet long with a hook at the end)

salmon were hauled in with one swift, continuous motion by the fisherman

baited hooks were not used as salmon on their way to spawn do not eat

sometimes when salmon arrived at a lake in large quantities during spawning season some natives used nets to herd large numbers of fish toward the shore

where they could be easily be taken by a variety of techniques

Tideland areas of salt water were generally fished by impounding the salmon during high tide salmon would come into the narrow and secluded parts of bays

Indians would build large pens using nets while the water was still high

when the tide went out the salmon would be trapped inside the pens

For small, narrow creeks and streams the Coastal people used ingenious funnel-shaped traps that had been wedged between two logs with the large opening facing downstream

funnel traps were woven of spruce root fibers and flax

that had been secured from Interior natives through barter

a salmon swam into the wide end of the funnel but could not escape out of the narrow end

when attempting to withdraw from the trap by swimming backwards

the fish’s gills were caught on the narrow edge of the funnel

fisherman later revisited the trap and removed the fish pulling it out by its tail

nets were also used, but had to be tended more often

as frequently too many fish were caught or the net would be torn by the fish

Larger creeks and streams and small rivers saw Indians use gill nets

these were long nets designed to catch fish of a specific size which was determined by the openings of the mesh in the net -- smaller fish were allowed to pass through

but the net would snare the gills of larger fish when it tried to force its way past

gill nets were set in a river for hours at a time then pulled to shore when filled with fish

generally, these nets were not placed across the entire river

but rather on alternating sides of a river every several hundred yards apart

so that some fish would pass around the nets and continue upriver to spawn

Even larger streams and rivers were fished using the native’s most famous technique -- weirs

weirs were usually community property

large weirs were built across the river to stop returning salmon from continuing upriver
weirs varied with the width of the stream but generally consisted of three tripods
made of vertical alder and willow planks about eight feet long
and one to two inches thick
these were sharpened to a point at one end and embedded in the stream bed
tripods were held together with a long pole toward the top of the planks
pickets lashed with cord to a long pole between tripods made a fence
across the river that held up the salmon as they swam upstream
each tripod above the water had a platform usually owned by a village family
permission had to be given for anyone else to use the fishing platform
once the salmon were trapped behind the weir, natives stood on the platform
and used four-foot to five-foot long dip-net
the fisherman dipped into the school of fish held by the fence
he lifted the fish from the water and clubbed it to death
weirs provided a way to keep salmon nearby and alive before they were harvested
Very large rivers were frequently fished at waterfalls and rapids where salmon would rest
before leaping forward to continue the journey toward their spawning beds
fisherman stood on a rock above the turbulent water holding a dip net
which was used because the salmon could not be seen
sometimes the fisherman stood on a scaffold built over the rapids
fisherman might remain motionless with spear poised above his head
for half an hour waiting for an opportunity to strike
in calmer water where the salmon could be seen the fisherman might stand on a rock
holding a twelve-foot-long spear pole cut with a wooden fork attached to the end
between the tines was attached a barbed shell or iron point
in very calm water a harpoon could be used
each harpoon had two heads of elk horn pointed at one end and notched at the other
this elk horn tip was attached to the spear shaft and tied firmly
a long rope was also attached to the spearhead
so if it came out of the fish the spearhead would not be lost
Fishing very large calm rivers was accomplished using nets strung between two canoes
when a large number of salmon had been harvested
natives would paddle the two canoes together closing the net
sometimes the fishermen harpooned fish from the canoes
Indians always provided a means for salmon to escape the net
by swimming under or around it -- even when multiple nets were used

LUMMI INDIANS DEVELOPED METHODS OF FISHING FOR SOCKEYE SALMON

Lummi Indians living near the northern part of the inland waters of the Strait of Georgia
developed a unique kind of fishing aptly called “reef-netting” using two canoes

a small net was tied by a cord to tall upright poles attached to the stern of both canoes
the other end of the net sloped downward under the two canoes
and was attached to a cord held by fishermen toward the front of the canoes
thus a sort of scoop was formed under the two canoes
as salmon swam into the net, they believed the floor of the bay was rising
role of the fishing chief was vitally important in this type of fishing
because split-second timing was necessary the head fisherman had to have
an incredible sense of timing and an intimate knowledge
of all of the factors that affected fish life
he needed an almost mystical sense about the salmon, the water, the nets,
the current of the water and his men's ability to raise the net quickly
he stood on a tower in the bow of one of the canoes
he had to tell from the movement of the water how far into the net fish had come
if the net was raised too soon the salmon would be frightened and swim away
if it was raised too late, the salmon would be able to swim over the net
or they would be able to detect the net in front of them and swim around it
at a certain point the head fisherman would shout
this was a signal to his fishing companions at the front of the canoe
to raise the net from the floor of the bay thus trapping the fish
fishing chiefs who enjoyed continued success as a reef netter were considered
to be possessed of a supernatural ability and religious powers over the salmon¹⁹
once the wild salmon were caught, they were gently spilled into a netted "live well"
to relax after their brief struggle and to allow the built up bitter lactic acid to dissipate
resulting in a sweeter-tasting flavor
unwanted species that may have been caught were placed back into the water
remaining salmon were bled by cutting a gill
before being placed in another live well to swim until they bled out
Reef-netting sites were the most prized inland fishing grounds because the catch,
generally, sockeye salmon, was considered a delicacy by all the tribes of the region
catching sockeye meant that the Lummi could trade extensively with other tribes
for desirable goods -- especially for the whale and seal oil
and meats killed and preserved by other coastal villages
(reef net ownership proved to be a great aid in scholarly interpretations of Indians treaties
by comparing the ownership of reef-netting locations with signatures on treaties
it was determined that no Lummi Indian would sign a document that took away
his reef-netting site -- thus when reef-net sight owners signed a treaty
this was an indication that native fishing rights remained in place)²⁰

¹⁹ Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest*, P. 14.

²⁰ Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest*, P. 14-15.

OTHER FISHERIES WERE AVAILABLE TO THE NATIVES OF THE PACIFIC COAST

Great varieties of fish other than salmon also were available to the Coastal natives
small fish like smelt, herring, or candlefish were valued for their oil
they were caught in abundance using scoop nets
smelt were harvested where rivers met the salt water
using a long stick with a cross-piece with sharp bones attached
that was lashed to the handle like a rake
herring were taken in bays or inlets with the same rakes
natives caught olachen or candlefish, an eight or nine-inch extremely oily fish,
that is so rich in oil it could be used like butter or lighted to serve as a candle
lake trout were readily available to be taken with a hook and line
by trolling (moving the fishing location by paddling the canoe)
and jigging (wiggling the fishing lure)
flounder fishing used one of the most exciting techniques used by the region's Indians
flounders are a flat fish that tend to rest on the bottom of mudflats along Puget Sound
Indian fisherman would wade into the mudflats until they stepped on a flounder
they would stand on the fish long enough to spear it with a sharp stick
while this method sounds simple, the spectacle of a hundred Indians
all wading in the muddiest water in the region with sharp sticks
continuously stabbing at their feet was a frightening scene to those who watched
as difficult as it is to believe Indians, even with all this frenzied activity,
rarely speared their own feet
Large fish such as true cod, rock cod, ling cod, skate, halibut and sturgeon were harvested
Makahs, Quileutes, and Quinaults used special hooks and long lines
they dared the open sea to catch deep-water halibut and cod
halibut, cod and skate fishing made use of a hook made of hemlock
a bone point was lashed with root and bark to the hook
natives fished for halibut twenty miles and more off Tatoosh Island
sturgeon fishing was done with harpoons which were thrown from canoes
fisherman also carried bird spears for small useful game

COASTAL INDIANS HAD AN ABUNDANCE OF FOOD

Early Coastal Indians were very fortunate as food was there for the taking
they successfully lived off the resources of the sea and land
no other area of equal size in the world enjoyed as much material prosperity
their diet was much richer in fats, proteins and minerals than in most other places
but they could become somewhat deficient in starch and other carbohydrates
even without the constant availability of salmon coastal people inhabited a land of plenty
mammals and sea-life from the ocean provided year-round food
as well as household items and commodities to trade

hunting seals, sea otters, sea lions and the like in the ocean and the large straits
took both great skill and technique as nets were of no use
Coastal natives enjoyed an abundance of easily acquired sea life
meat was needed only for variety
while the sea provided a dependable harvest of fish, shellfish and marine animals
most of the fish that was eaten came from streams -- not the ocean
Both Coastal women and men left the winter village during the month of May
to gather clams and other shell fish
when a large supply was obtained, women dried them and took the catch home
Native women and girls of the coast gathered shellfish such as fresh oysters, barnacles,
mussels, crab, abalone, sea urchin and lampreys almost year around in the shallow bays
and on the beaches
while some of these were dried for winter use,
most of the harvest was eaten during gigantic feasts
crabs were usually plentiful in the spring at the northern end of the Olympic Peninsula
During the spring Coastal women gathered eelgrass and seaweed to vary their family's diet
both fish eggs and bird eggs were gathered, eaten and used in cooking
pheasant, lark, duck and goose eggs were most commonly used
meat of birds and small animals added variety to the Coastal diet
a large variety of vegetables were gathered and prepared by women in the spring
like common and woolly burdock; the stems, leaves and flowers of various bedstraw
Coastal men west of the Cascade Mountains, fished the Columbia River and its tributaries
which ran thick with salmon in the spring, summer and fall
Chinook Indians lived in well-established villages along the Columbia
other Indians established semi-permanent camps when fish were running to spawn
Coastal climate was less harsh than in Eastern Washington's desert-like area
no attempt was made at agriculture and none was needed

VARIETIES OF FOOD LED TO TRADE AMONG THE COASTAL INDIANS

Because food and other trade items were so plentiful along the Pacific coast
Coastal people had to become specialists in order to produce unique goods for trade
simply smoking salmon was not enough because everyone did
rather, different villages developed specialty items that would be coveted by others
in order to participate in the trade
no one grew extremely rich and no one was very poor
it was a system that worked out well for everyone
Some villages specialized in catching and preparing a certain species of salmon
while other villages concentrated their efforts on another species
so sophisticated was their taste that many natives could tell from one bite of the food
exactly what stream a fish had come from and which Indians had prepared it

Makah Indians did not have sufficient cedar of suitable quantity for houses or large canoes however, the Nootkas (Nuu-chah-nulth on Vancouver Island) had a plentiful supply Makahs traded for cedar canoes and planks with the Nootkas offering in exchange whale oil and seal oil, dried herring roe (a type of caviar) and other products that could be obtained only in the Pacific Ocean Makahs also traded whale meat for red ochre used for paint and cosmetics found only in Quileute territory

When the complex number of trades among natives is considered it is possible to understand how the Indians of the area welcomed the fur traders, the first non-Indians to come among them

PLATEAU INDIAN MEN FISHED A VARIETY OF RIVERS IN SUMMER MONTHS

Plateau Indians of Eastern Washington needed salmon even more than the coastal people Inland natives were dependent on fish as a primary food source but fish was not as abundant as in Western Washington

Plateau Indians left their permanent villages and camped beside the rivers they fished such as Celilo Falls and Kettle Falls on the Columbia River where salmon were forced to leap over waterfalls fishing camps presented a holiday aspect from June to October at some fishing places a principal leader was chose his authority was final in determining the daily division of the fish catch

Depending on their surroundings Plateau Indians used different methods to catch fish Indians stood on shaky wooden platforms that extended over the waterfalls and rapids with a rope tied around their waste in case they fell they speared and dip netted salmon as they jumped out of the water some tributaries of the Columbia, like the Spokane, Salmon and Clearwater rivers, supported large annual salmon runs that provided an important food source for tribes some of the largest salmon ever caught in the Columbia River Basin were taken from the Spokane River (a tributary of the Columbia) summer-run Chinook salmon some close to five feet long weighed up to 80 pounds (pioneers, after their arrival, called these giant fish “June hogs”) sometimes fish traps were constructed in smaller streams and rivers occasionally nets made of vines and plant stems were used to catch trout and salmon

COLUMBIA RIVER PROVIDED A UNIQUE FISHERY

Columbia River provided a link through the Cascades and was significant source of salmon Indians from many tribes and villages, both Coastal and Plateau peoples, gathered along the Columbia River at Celilo Falls which was a major center of native commerce during the salmon run

Chinook Indians who lived along the Columbia River had a unique manner of catching fish they would construct a net some five hundred feet long and nearly fifteen feet in depth

that would be placed in the river going nearly completely across in some places
when the salmon run began, they would gradually pull one end of the net toward shore
fishermen would wade into the river with mallets and clubs to kill the fish
and throw them up on the bank
this technique required many men and was useful only when there was a large run
but the salmon runs on the Columbia River in the old days were incredibly large

PLATEAU NATIVE HAD FEWER RESOURCES AVAILABLE TO THEM

Plateau Indians lived east of the Cascade Mountains in the interior of the Pacific Northwest
in the area between the Cascade Mountains and the Rocky Mountains
Inland people faced a harsher climate and more difficult terrain
than Indians along the Pacific coast

Plateau natives were more mobile than those living along the coast
food was not so easily acquired as along the Pacific Coast and was in shorter supply
hunting and gathering, basis of life, took more time
natives lived their lives as nomads forced to move in search of food
from fishing sites in rivers, lakes and streams to hunting grounds, to fields of root
to berry patches

Plateau people made extensive use of salmon, deer, roots and berries
their diet included more starch and berry sugars than the Coastal Indians
because they were very mobile materialism was far less significant than along the coast
as personal belongings and heirlooms could not be easily carried from place to place

COLMBIA RIVER LINKED THE INDIANS TOGETHER

An extensive system of trade extended across the Cascade Mountains to Eastern Washington
Puget Sound people, who had more salmon than they knew what to do with,
even so often traveled across the snowy Cascades to trade for salmon
that had come up the Columbia to the famous Celilo Falls of the Yakima Indians
most Indians considered the absolutely best salmon
was that of the Yakima Indians who lived along the Columbia River
(Celilo Falls, unfortunately, is no more)

Coastal Natives traveled up the Columbia River to fish at the waterfalls
they brought with them to sell to the people of the mountains and the interior
five species of salmon, dried clams, camas root, sea otter fur, seals, whale bone,
oil from whales and dogfish, haikwa (a precious seashell),
and a variety of other fish and foods
they also sold slaves they had captured

Indians who lived along the Columbia River in the mountains
exchanged dried or smoked salmon for buffalo, antelope and other meat delicacies
mountain goat meat was considered a treat among many of the Coastal natives

and they were happy to trade their fish for it
for instance, people who lived on the western slopes of the Cascades
brought goat meat to the Makah Indians and traded for whale meat and oil
Plateau Natives such as Cayuse, Palouse, Umatilla and Nez Perce Indians
traveled down the Columbia River on fishing expeditions to the waterfalls
they brought antelope skins, bison robes, flints, dyes and beaver pelts
they exchanged mountain sheep wool, porcupine quills, hand-made embroidery
and a kind of grass from which Coastal women made delicate threads for sewing
Chinook Indians living along the Columbia River
became rich and powerful as middlemen in the trade
Chinook Jargon composed of a variety of languages became the natives' trading language
Wishram natives living near The Dalles, (Oregon) grew rich trading near home
they caught fish for barter in exchange for roots, fur robes and later horses
trade between the coast and the interior had to go through them
they took a toll from all travelers by robbing them
Trading for various commodities became quite complicated
gatherings at Columbia River fishing camps resembled a combination fair and carnival
athletic contests, gamboling, dancing, and later, horse racing
provided welcome relief from fishing

COASTAL AND PLATEAU WOMEN WERE ESPECIALLY BUSY IN THE AUTUMN

Both Coastal and Plateau women often worked apart from the men during autumn
as the women and children traveled to the mountains to gather roots and berries
they also were busily occupied with preserving the bountiful yield
much of the work of harvesting and preserving was done in groups
seeds were gathered and stored for use throughout the year
sunflower seeds were pounded into meal used for cooking meats
pine seeds were roasted or boiled
crab apples and nuts such as acorns and hazelnuts
were gathered around the fringe of the forests
tubers were used in great quantities by both the Coastal and Plateau people
wapato (wild potato) grows in shallow lakes to about the size of an egg
these have a white meat and are very sweet and nutritious
wapato was eaten fresh or dried for use later
berries in a seemingly infinite variety grew in season
Oregon grape, gooseberry, salmon berry, raspberry, salal berry, wild strawberry
these usually were sun dried or spread on cedar bark and dried over a fire
for winter use
occasionally they were preserved by mashing them in a large basket
then molding them into pemmican cakes

elderberry and blackcaps (blackberries) were dried
Indians burned away the underbrush so huckleberries would grow better
trees were not damaged because lack of vegetation
kept the fire from getting too hot
both huckleberries and choke cherries sometimes were boiled
tea was made from huckleberry leaves
serviceberries and hawthorn berries were dried, pulverized, moistened,
these were made into small pemmican cakes and dried again
Plateau women also harvested roots, berries, nuts, seeds and gathered fruits in season
roots of bracken fern and wood fern were gathered in the fall and winter
kouse (an edible plant), bitterroot, wild onion and other roots
were important food sources that grew on most prairies
they formed a larger part of the Plateau diet than was necessary along the coast
supplementary foods were also gathered by Plateau women
tribes along the Snake River set grass fires to gather scorched grasshoppers
dried grasshoppers were pulverized with a pestle in a mortar
and beaten into a pemmican- like mass
Okanogan natives made bread from tree moss that was dried
to reduce the moss to a pasty condition which was then molded it into cakes
dried the inner bark of pine trees were eaten
dogs and horses (after they were introduced) were eaten in times of extreme want

AUTUMN WAS THE TIME WHEN COASTAL AND PLATEAU INDIAN MEN HUNTED

Both Coastal villagers and Plateau tribesmen were interested in hunting
hunting dogs were bred for chasing game
Coastal and Plateau men used pit traps with sharp pointed stakes driven into the bottom
bear traps consisted of a four foot to five-foot hole covered with brush
dug under a horizontal pole
two poles about ten feet high were erected near black bear tracks
a heavy horizontal log (dead fall) was placed on top of the poles
dead fall was attached to a rope that was tied to the brush which covered pit trap
when the bear stepped onto the brush and crashed into the pit
the horizontal pole crashed down on the animal
the drop of the heavy log would (hopefully) kill the bear
Snare traps also were used on both sides of the Cascade Mountains for other land animals
deer, elk, caribou, mountain goat, wildcat, cougar
as well as squirrels, rabbits, groundhogs and other small animals were killed for food
all of the necessary materials for a snare trap were natural and readily available
strong, young trees were used for the springs of the trap
a release stick and a trigger stick were easily found and rawhide rope was available

Sometimes when deer or elk came close enough to the village to be considered game these large animals were run down and killed when they became exhausted or they were chased into the water where they were defenseless as they swam and were killed with arrows or clubs however, fear of the forests ruled our chasing game too far from the village and weapons were usually useless against large beasts

Also adding variety to the winter diet was beaver which were killed with spears when hunters in canoes broke open the beaver's dam, beavers appeared to repair the break and would be killed

Birds were hunted by Coastal and Plateau Indians from early autumn into the winter in autumn duck, geese and other waterfowl were caught in large nets stretched between two tall poles placed upwind from a pond where ducks spent the night at a given signal natives carrying lighted torches would come out of the darkness yelling birds, frightened by the noise and lights, flew off head first into the net and would fall to the ground where Indians would gather them as they lay stunned bird's neck would be broken by holding the duck's head and bill in one hand and swinging the bird's body in a circular motion

small parties of Coastal and Plateau men would hunt for several varieties of birds that provided variety in their diet

snipe, pheasant and grouse, smaller sized doves, and larger sized pigeons were hunted and eaten -- natives never ate gulls, eagles, or hawks birds were hunted with a sling about three feet long made of willow bark string that had loops at the end for the fingers pocket of the sling made of small piece of animal skin attached to the string held the missile

On the Pacific coast game meat and birds provided variety in the Indian diet deer and elk provided venison that was dried with special care meat was cut into pieces and placed on a wooden frame to dry fires were built on three sides and the meat was thoroughly roasted before it was hung higher above the fire and slowly dried meat was kept in trees or covered with cedar bark to keep it out of the rain if the coastal hunter was very successful everyone from the village gathered for a meal after the feast, the hunter gave presents to his friends

Some Plateau natives invaded the land of the Plains Indians during seasonal migrations Flathead Indians of Western Montana joined with friendly Nez Perce natives of Idaho in the pursuit of buffalo beyond the Rocky Mountains small in number, these wandering bands from the Columbia Basin were always wary as they knew they were trespassing in a foreign land bison hunters used a sportsman-like chase to kill their prey hunters removed all of their clothing

approaching their prey down-wind and from behind, the herd was stalked on foot
sometimes the hunter selected an animal and separated it from the herd
by dashing between the animal and the other animals
hunters would attempt to kill the bison with bow and arrow
sometimes the herd was driven over a cliff over a “buffalo jump”
herd members would follow the lead animal over the cliff
native men and women waited below the jump
wounded animals were killed with spears and clubs
animals would be butchered where they lay
(later acquisition of the horse made buffalo hunting easier)

COASTAL MEN HUNTED FOR A VARIETY OF SEA ANIMALS IN WINTER

Hunting parties along the Pacific Ocean set out in quest of porpoise, seal, sea lion and otter
seals were especially valuable both for their meat and for their oil
seal hunting was carried out from canoes using harpoons
after the kill, the seal carcass was brought to the beach
before butchering the seal, it was slowly rolled over in a fire to singe off the hair
then its skin was scrapped off
seal was cut open and the fat was removed
seal grease was eaten with dried salmon and clams
seal oil, stored in seal and fish bladders, was used by the villagers of Puget Sound
sometimes oil was poured on a fire to make it burn better

PLATEAU NATIVE MEN HUNTED FOR A VARIETY OF MEAT IN WINTER

Plateau Indians lived their lives similar to the way Plains Indians lived
they depended on deer, elk, bear and other game for food and clothing
and to supplement their diet because salmon was less plentiful than along the coast
these animals lived on the many small prairies and foothills of the Cascade Mountains
After fall fishing season was over, hunting parties were organized
all native people hunted large game at night -- particularly in the wintertime
torches of pine heavily covered with pitch were carried
coming upon a deer or elk the sudden light of the torch would startle the animal
which would freeze long enough to get a clear shot with bow and arrow
sometimes an ambush was laid at a valley's narrow end into which game was driven
other times wooden traps and dead falls were used where trees were available

IN WINTER WHALES WERE AVAILABLE TO SOME OF THE COASTAL PEOPLE

Hoh, Quileute and Quinault Indians living on the Olympic Peninsula beside the Pacific
simply searched for whale carcasses that washed up on the beach
California Gray whales, about forty feet long, were frequent visitors to the coastal waters

these were butchered and divided among the members of the village
each village member's status determined the allotment received
S'Kallam Indians used "whale fencing" along the Strait of Juan de Fuca
when a whale swam too close to shore and became stranded by the receding tide
S'Kallams took to their canoes and drove long poles into the rocky beach
thus they constructed a fence between the whale and open water
as the whale attempted to swim away from the fence -- that is, closer toward the shore
when the tide went out the whale became beached
eventually the whale was high enough on the sand to allow for killing and butchering

MAKAH INDIANS CONDUCTED WHALE HUNTS IN WINTER

Makah Indians of Cape Flattery caught a few salmon and many halibut in their coastal waters
but they were primarily renowned as the whalers of the Northwest
cooler months were spent preparing and practicing
with canoes, harpoons, floats and ropes
whale hunts took place in November, December and January
when whales migrated through the area
after appropriate ceremonies were held to honor the spirit of the whales
natives usually ventured in groups of four canoes -- 100 or more to a hunting party
Makah natives were skilled hunters who were both strong and agile
they were so respected by the other Indian people for their ability and daring
they were considered to be the aristocrats among all of the Coastal Indian people
they were always seated at the places of honor during native feasts and ceremonies
Nuu-chah-nult (formerly Nootka) Indians of Vancouver Island
also hunted whales off the island's Pacific coast
they also were held in very high esteem by other coastal natives
Today's Eskimos provide insight into the methods of ancient Northwest Indian whaling
when Eskimos hunted whales along the Northwest Alaska coast
they used open, ocean-going dugout canoes forty feet long and six feet wide
each whaling crew member occupied the same place in the canoes
and performed the same tasks as did whale hunters in Washington
equipment was much the same as that used by Makah hunters
In the ancient whaling village of Ozette on the Olympic Peninsula's Makah Reservation
artifacts of tools that indicate whale hunting activity dating back 2,000 years
have been found

MAKAH INDIAN FAMILIES OWNED DESIGNATED WHALE HUNTING GROUNDS

Makah Indians portioned off areas of the ocean into exclusive family allotments
these areas were owned like property and were handed down from father to son
various landmarks on the shore were used to establish where lines would intersect

as if they had been drawn on a map -- a concept unknown to native people
Makahs could take a canoe almost out of sight of land and still identify his family's area
by sighting noted land features such as points of land, high mountains or river mouths
compasses and nautical tools were unnecessary
because from the time each boy was old enough to ride in a canoe
he was taught where the fishing and whaling areas were and who owned them

WHALING REMAINED UNCHANGED FOR THOUSANDS OF YEARS

Big whaling canoes up to fifty- or sixty-foot long and over six feet wide
held as many as twenty-five to thirty men
and traveled as much as twenty miles into the Pacific Ocean
whaling canoes, although very large, were tiny beside the gigantic whales
Makah whalers wore a poncho of seal skin to stay dry
spruce root hats covered their heads and shaded their eyes
bearskin robes were used for warmth

To propel the whaling canoe a thin and flat paddle blade and handle
was carved out of one piece of maple or yew wood and tapered to a point at the bottom
whaling paddles sanded smooth with shark skin or dogfish skin were indented
much like a teaspoon
for speed the spoon-shaped surface was used to propel the canoe
quiet and caution were necessary to approach the whale
at a signal the paddles were turned sideways to silently slice through the water

Harpoons were constructed of yew wood shafts with a cedar bark rope attached
it was necessary to come very close to the whale
as the harpoon was thrust rather than thrown
tip of the harpoon was made of flexible shell or elk horn (later copper) tied to the shaft
when the harpoon was thrust into the whale, the tip flattened against the shaft
as the harpooner pulled back on the harpoon the tip sprung open
and remained in the animal
one end of a long rope was attached to the harpoon
and the other end of the rope was attached to the canoe

WHALING CHIEF WAS DESIGNATED TO THRUST THE HARPOON

Whaling chief was a man of great religious powers who knew the whales and seals
he was highly regarded and well rewarded for his exalted position as the harpooner
these very exceptional leaders had been taught songs
to encourage the animals to become food for the people
these songs, passed down in families from generation to generation,
were a family's most treasured heirloom
there was no greater insult or theft than to steal a song from a family

whenever someone tried to do so a great crisis was generated in the village
In the canoe the harpooner was followed in importance by the steersman

WHALE HUNTING WAS EXCITING AND FUN FOR THE MAKAHS

When the harpooner located a whale, he raised his arm holding the harpoon into the air
this was the signal for paddlers turned their paddles 90°
and use the edge of the paddle to displace the water
almost silently, they approached the whale

Harpooner attempted to drive the harpoon into the whale
once the harpoon had been thrust into the whale, inflated seal bladders
attached to the harpoon line were used as floats to slow the wounded animal
and keep it from diving

Wounded whales could react in several ways:

- sounding -- diving toward the bottom of the ocean
when this occurred, the harpooner would use his thumb to feel the rope as it exited
if the rope was exiting too fast or the end of the rope was approaching
the harpooner simply cut the rope and let the whale go
- swimming away pulling the canoe after it at breakneck speed
natives grabbed the gunwales of the canoe and held on
hoping the whale would not turn and attack the canoe smashing it to pieces
- stopping in the water and flipping its tail thus smashing the canoe to pieces

Sometimes whales carried the hunters out to sea fifty or more miles

Makah natives always found their way home
even in high seas and in thick fog banks, their navigation was unerring

All of the canoes of the expedition would approach the injured whale to give assistance
they would attempt to sink additional harpoons into the whale
thus more and more seal bladders were attached

the great mammal became exhausted dragging so many floats
as the whale lost some of its agility, it became increasingly difficult to swim

Natives used the whale's great strength to deliver it to a more convenient place to be killed
Indians maneuvered their canoes to drive the harpooned whale toward the beach

When the whale was near death, native swimmers jumped into the water and dived under
they placed a series of ropes attached to sets of two seal bladders (floats) at opposite ends
under the whale to form a sling to hold up the whale

seal bladders were then blown up to keep the whale afloat
canoes lined up and worked together as the whale was guided and towed to the beach
when the whalers finally arrived at the beach with their prize
natives could finish killing and butchering the animal

On the beach a celebration took place which usually lasted for days and ended with a feast
blubber (whale fat) was eaten and boiled to extract whale oil that was of great value

harpooner was rewarded for his skill and daring
he was given the choicest portion -- the hump
he saw to the distribution of shares to the crew and other members of the village
Much of the wonder of this spiritual and economic activity
was how successful the Makahs were as they beached the gigantic animals
with tools and canoes totally inadequate for the task
since they did not try to kill the whale immediately
it was a rare occasion when the Makahs lost a whale

CEREMONIES MARKED IMPORTANT EVENTS IN THE LIVES OF NATIVES

Birth, entry into adulthood and death were each important ritually protected events
most ceremonies included some time for smoking
all men smoked pipes for pleasure and ceremony -- women did not take part
pipe's bowl was made of stone
the stem was from a hollow bird bone or plant stem
mixture of bark and tobacco known as kinnikinnick served as tobacco
when pipes were smoked the breath, believed by Indians to be source of life,
became visible
exhaled smoke rose to The Changer carrying prayers
when a pipe was shared it was believed the smokers shared the same breath

MOST COASTAL NATIVE CEREMONIES WERE HELD DURING THE WINTER

Because a great variety of food was available in such abundance along the coast
Indians, therefore, were free to develop an impressive social life
Coast culture was the most spectacular of all of the natives in the Pacific Northwest
and, perhaps, in all of North America
Dreary and rainy winter along the coast was a time for most important religious ceremonies
with the one exception of the first-salmon ceremonies which were observed
at the beginning of the salmon run in the spring
when not involved in religious rituals, Indians spent their time making household goods
and fishing steelhead trout which returned to the rivers in winter
to provide fresh meat which was added to foods preserved the previous summer

WINTER CEREMONY PROVIDES AN OPPORTUNITY TO HONOR THEIR SPIRIT

According to legend, once a year the Guardian Spirit must leave the person
and travel in a counter-clockwise direction around the earth
during this journey the Guardian Spirit could be gone for up to a year
Guardian Spirits gambled and traded as they traveled and the owner's luck varied
according to the success of his or her spirit experienced during its travels
Guardian Spirit came back to the owner in time for the Winter Ceremony

which was held sometime between mid-November and the beginning of January
 when the Guardian Spirit returned, the owner felt sick
 and he or she would hear their Spirit Song singing in their ears
 Eight to ten weeks were exclusively given over to spirit dances during the Winter Ceremony
 impersonating a person's Guardian Spirit was part of the ceremony
 which featured individuals singing and dancing -- and perhaps a presentation of gifts
 dancers wore spirit masks that were identified with their Guardian Spirit
 those watching saw the participant not just as representatives of the spirit
 but as the spirit itself who had descended from the Spirit World to dance and sing
 therefore, the dancer must act out every detail of everything told in the spirit's legend
 and the performer was not responsible for what was done during the performance
 friends were called upon to help the dancer sing the Spirit Song
 and dance the Spirit Dance
 if no one knew the song the friends followed along and learned it
 During the ceremony each individual was expected to give gifts to guests, family, and friends
 when the dancing and singing, which could last for several days, was over
 it was expected, if the performer was rich enough, a gift of many blankets
 would be given to the friends who had assisted
 if the performer was poor no gifts were expected
 Plateau native Colville Indians' Winter Dance featured a special "power" performance²¹
 known as "going behind the blanket"
 while blowing steadily on a whistle, the "powerseeker"
 stepped behind a mat or blanket hung between him and the audience
 he soon reappeared with his arms behind him, thumbs tied to his belt with rope
 before the eyes of the audience, the knots were untied
 and he disappeared behind the blanket
 the powerseeker repeated this activity seven times
 during the rest of the performance behind the blanket he was "cut in two" by a rope
 and reassembled by the spirits
 then he was carried away by the "Owl Spirit" and finally was restored to his normal self
 audience participated by lighting a smudge, passing the pipe
 and asking questions of the spirits
 only the Colville Indians did the behind the blanket ceremony

INDIAN MEN WITH THE SAME GUARDIAN SPIRIT FORMED SECRET SOCIETIES

Every winter both Coastal and Plateau Indian children watched Secret Society members
 perform their spirit songs and dances which were taught to them by their Guardian Spirits
 Society members shared prestige because they possessed a particular Guardian Spirit
 to belong to any society a youth had to be from the higher classes

²¹ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*, P. 21

in order to pay the dues and provide the required feast
very elaborate displays of their status were made during the Winter Ceremony
elaborately carved masks representing the spirit were worn
these masks were carved only in secret, usually in the seclusion of the deep woods,
so that no uninitiated person could discover and identify the maker
secret society decrees governed how often and how long a mask could be used
“Black Spirit Society” was one of the most prestigious among the Coastal people²²
this society’s dominating spirit was a very frightening one
probably a cannibal monster from past ages
this spirit was desired because of the power it gave to endure pain and heal the sick
but the spirit could not be found by mere seeking
when the requirements of the Black Society, including initiation, had been completed
members could wear a hideous mask
and join in the terrifying rituals of the society to show they felt no pain,
Makahs slashed their arms and legs and danced with blood streaming
although this society was disappearing by the time Europeans arrived
it was still known to the Chinooks, Quileutes, Makahs, S’Klallams,
and some of the Puget Sound villages
No Secret Societies existed in the Interior tribes
all of the men and some of the women of the village danced during the Winter Ceremony

INDIAN RECREATION CELEBRATED THE JOYS OF COMMUNAL LIVING

Native Americans held children’s games were important whenever a group gathered
shinny (a kind of hockey) where sticks were used to drive balls over a one-mile course
wrestling and tug-of-war were played
marksmanship games also honed skills and sportsmanship
Adult athletic contests were displays of both skill and good fortune
which proved their Guardian Spirit was active and helping in daily life
gamboling was a favorite activity and was conducted almost constantly
in addition to providing recreations gambling also redistributed wealth
women watched men gamble and helped by singing -- but never participated
if a man lost everything, he owned gambling, he might sell himself into slavery

THE BONE GAME WAS LONG AND COMPLEX

The Bone Game was played for thousands of years between rival teams within a village
or between disputing tribes, and even nations in conflict
since a higher value was placed on human life than was placed on material possessions
each side was willing to set and lose significant stakes
rather than go to war over a dispute

²² Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington*, P. 22.

Two teams of five players each were formed -- each player had a role in the game
decisions were made by consensus adding greatly to the time necessary to play the game
first the five ritual roles had to be filled: the verbal negotiator, the silent negotiator,
two hidiers and one pointer
Selecting who played what role was time consuming
first a "Power Object" had to be selected
each player on a team offered a personal treasure to serve in that capacity
only the person holding the Power Object could speak
all others had to pay attention
all of the proposed Power Objects were passed counter-clockwise one at a time
around the circle of five players
when the Power Object was received the owner explained why this was good choice
in turn the other players explained why this would be a good or bad choice
after all of the potential Power Objects had been considered a vote was taken
one thumb up for YES; thumb down for NO; palm open face up for NEUTRAL
next, using the same process, players were selected for each position
holding the Power Object each player explained
why he or she was a good choice for a position
after completing the circle a vote was taken for each of the five positions
verbal negotiator was the only person who could speak to the other team
and then only to that team's verbal negotiator
silent negotiator reminded the verbal negotiator of his or her team's intent and wishes
and could report on the other team's actions and intent to the verbal negotiator
two people served as hidiers who actually played the game trying to hid the bones
pointer was to identify where the bones were hidden by the other team's hidiers
After making these decisions by consensus and each player fully speaking his or her mind
a meeting was held by the two verbal negotiators assisted by the silent negotiators
to decide where the game would be played
after reporting back to their respective teams a decision regarding the location
was reached by consensus using the usual process
Next the stakes for the game had to identified -- this could a collection of individual wagers
or a collective wager proposed by the whole team
these stakes were real and the losing team must be willing to deliver what was bet
one team might wager all of their winter wheat as the other team wagered eight slaves
or, perhaps, a war was avoided
again the verbal negotiators aided by the silent negotiator
met to reach an agreement on the wager
none of these processes could be rushed -- time is of no significance
Now the game itself actually began as each team's two hidiers sat across from each other
four carved or painted bones small enough to fit in a person's closed hand were displayed

two were worth one point each and two were worth no points
one team's two hiders went away to decide who would hold which bones where and how
team members provided advice on how to hide the bones to confuse the other team
for example, one hider might hold a one-point bone in one hand and a no point bone
in the other

or both point bones might be held in one hand and the no point bones in the other
while the other holder held nothing

Before the game started the bones were shown to the other team's pointer to avoid dispute
team members silently stood behind their hiders who passed the bones back and forth
and used sleight of hand to confuse the other team's pointer
finally they stopped and the pointer used his or her index fingers to point out
where bones were being held

this could take as long as the pointer wanted before the actual guess was made
spiritual help in selecting the location of the point bones was acceptable
when the bones were displayed the points, if any, were added

this game was played to seven and could take several days to complete

POTLATCH CEREMONIES REDISTRIBUTED THE WEALTH OF NATIVE AMERICANS

Huge feasts were the most important social event for the coastal native people

custom of holding a "potlatch" centered on today's Vancouver Island

most of what we know about potlatches has been learned

from the Kwailutl and Nuu-chah-nulth (Nootka) Indians

all Coastal Indians of today's United States and Canada held potlatches
potlatches, usually held in winter, and included a feast, singing and costumed dancers

S'Kallams and Quinalts infused potlatches into the Winter Ceremony

Potlatches were conducted to celebrate an important event in the life of the host or his village
such as a birth, receiving a Guardian Spirit, marriage, or finishing a new longhouse

this gesture also could be suggested by the host's Guardian Spirit

if a man had the "wealth" spirit, his "partner" might say to him: **"You had better throw
away our money now. I (the spirit) would like to hear all the shamans sing their song."**²³

occasionally, a "Dignity Potlatch" might be necessary to offset some humiliation

in Northwest Coast native culture, a person could not be laughed at

or they lost all dignity

if a chief had an embarrassing moment such as falling out of a canoe

a smaller potlatch was held to reestablish his dignity

Most importantly, potlatches became a way for families to display their wealth

it was considered meritorious to give away everything and start over

generosity made a man famous

a wealthy man enjoyed distributing his wealth himself rather than after his death

²³ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*, P. 21.

purpose of the potlatch was to humiliate the guests by out-giving each of them
host's social position could be altered depending on the potlatch's size and success
Each person invited to a potlatch received gifts related to his social rank
canoes, slaves, carved serving dishes, candlefish oil and other items were distributed
the more wealth given away, the more prestige was bestowed on the host and his family
Potlatch feasts were held in the potlatch house if the village was wealthy enough to have one
very wealthy, prominent hosts would have a longhouse specifically for potlatching
and for housing guests
some potlatches lasted as long as two to three weeks

EXTENSIVE PREPARATIONS WERE NECESSARY FOR A POTLATCH

Potlatches were hosted by a prominent aristocratic Indian for all of his extend family
this large family unit was thought to have descended from a mythical animal
who descend to Earth and removed his animal mask thus becoming human
the mask became a significant family heirloom passed from father to son
along with the name of the ancestor
each member of the family was an incarnation of the founder
During the potlatch titles associated with masks and other objects were redistributed
each family member held title to a rank which identified where he sat at the potlatch
one person could hold several ranks and could be elevated or demoted
depending on the number and significance of the gifts presented
in effect, the host challenged each guest to exceed his "power" in giving away
or destroying goods
if the guest later did not give away all of the gifts received and destroy even more wealth
he and his people lost face and so his power was diminished
It could take years for a wealthy Indian to save up enough property to give a proper potlatch
host must collect canoes, mats, blankets, jewelry, baskets, carved boxes,
cooking, serving and eating dishes, and hundreds of other items which were needed
valuables were taken from storage places to be given as gifts
huge amounts of food must be prepared to feed guests
slaves had to be purchased to provide service for the guests

POTLATCH CEREMONY WAS A GALA EVENT

Host sent out invitations to his family members in the village and in surrounding villages
guests arrived wearing their best clothing
each guest brought gifts of fish, deer, blankets, shell money and other valuables
in an attempt to bring more than was received back in gifts
thus shaming the host with their generosity
An official orator greeted the guests as they arrived at the beach
village orator gave long speeches telling the story of the host's family and village history

he sang and danced during the especially significant parts
as the orator talked, presents were piled before the orator by the guests
everyone was anxious to give something to a famous speaker
Strict rules of seating were observed
the guest with the greatest wealth and highest social position
was seated first at the right hand of the host
next most honored guest was seated at the left hand of the host
next most honored guest seated at the right hand of the most honored guest
next most honored guest seated at the left hand of the second most honored guest
the seating would continue down the length of the serving area
commoners and slaves must be content with what was left
Each village performed their ceremonial dance during the potlatch
while villagers danced, other village members gave presents to the spectators
Several rounds of gifts were given by the host throughout the potlatch
each person receiving a gift was under an obligation to the host
guests were disgraced if in the future they could not invite the host
to a potlatch of their own and return gifts of even more value
thus the host anticipated getting back more than he had given

CONCLUSION OF THE POTLATCH

From the most exalted to the lowest person, each received part of the region's natural wealth
this was a form of Indian communism
but the resources were redistributed according to wealth rather than according to need
this mutual sharing of the natural resources made it difficult in later times
for United States government officials to impose a system of ownership on natives
However, the host had kept his most important possessions for himself
his family name and his valuable resource-producing assets
such as the rights to his hunting and fishing grounds and berry-picking patch
in the meantime, his personal status had been enhanced
of course, he now anticipated attending other potlatches as an important guest
who would receive much more material wealth in return

NORTHWEST NATIVES PRODUCED EXCELLENT ARTWORK

Coastal women produced beautifully woven artwork
spinning thread was done with a spindle and whorl (flywheel or pulley)
spindle was held under the spinner's right knee and was set in motion
by twisting one end while the other end of the spindle was held up high
by means of the thread held in her left hand
spinner twisted wool on her right thigh to be added into the thread
when part of the thread was twisted sufficiently, it was wound on the spindle

near the whorl and was further twisted by the rotation of the spindle
 more wool to be added into the thread was then twisted on her thigh
 other materials such as inner cedar bark and nettle threads could be added
 and the mixture spun into the thread
 soft down of duck or goose feathers stripped of quills and pounded with a stick
 was mixed with downy fiber of fireweed, milkweed and mountain goat fibers
 which had been pulled from bushes or removed from a goat that was killed
 women beat white clay and vegetable fibers into the wool to whiten it
 Weaving the threads on a loom into material gave the artist an opportunity
 to develop her artistic skills and to dress her family well
 each loom was made of two straight posts set on the house floor and leaned against a wall
 cross pieces, at the top and the bottom, ran through holes drilled in the uprights
 weft (horizontal) threads were stretch across the loom
 warp (vertical) threads were woven through the weft and attached to cross pieces
 S’Kallam Indians of the Olympic Peninsula raised a special breed of dog with woolly hair
 these were kept on several small, isolated islands in Puget Sound
 women took canoes to the islands each day to feed the dogs
 dogs, their forelegs were tied together, were shorn like sheep
 S’Kallam women used a stone knife or a mussel shell to chip off the dog’s hair
 which was combed into strands with the fingers
 these strands were made into threads by use of a wooden spindle
 dog wool was skillfully woven into robes that were sometimes called “Salish blankets”²⁴
 that were used as bedding and, in winter, as robes
 Dyes added color and interesting designs to clothing, baskets and mats
 mud was used to make black while Oregon Grape root produced very pretty yellow
 cherry bark gave a bright red
 wool sometimes was dyed pink with hemlock or alder bark
 other plants and plant combinations also were used to provide an endless variety of colors

COASTAL WOMEN’S BASKETRY ART WAS HIGHLY DEVELOPED

Coastal Indian women gathered grasses in summer and soaked the fibers in water
 until winter arrived when they had time to patiently pull the fibers into threads
 Village differences could be seen in the variety of baskets woven:

- some villages made coiled baskets with a foundation made of dried cedar root
 these were used for cooking purposes;
- softer twined baskets with borders of dog wool were made by S’Kallam villagers
 these were used to store possessions;
- loosely twined baskets with ribbed twill bottoms also were made
 these were used to store dried foods -- often they were lined with maple leaves

²⁴ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden’s History of Washington*. P. 12.

COASTAL NATIVE MEN ALSO WERE EXCELLENT ARTISTS

Coastal art found a highly developed expression in woodcarving and painting
distinctive style of artwork developed by Coastal men
was unsurpassed for beauty and expression

Tools and techniques for carving, splitting, joining and steaming Western Red Cedar
allowed Coastal people to augment their lives materially, artistically and spiritually
wood carvers used two main tools:

- adze carving tools were used to rough out the shape and to carve fine details;
- hand hammers made of stone hammerheads fastened to wooden handles
and bone and antler hammers were used for detail work

when sanding was necessary, a sandstone block or dogfish skin “sandpaper” was used
sometimes shark skin, when it was available, was used to polish the finish
cedar root was also used in the construction of beautiful and useful objects

Highly prized useful products were skillfully constructed by craftsmen

baby cradles were crafted from cedar posts

decorated wooden storage chests, dishes and bowls were beautifully made and prized
beautifully carved fanciful wooden masks were worn during ceremonial dances

watertight bent wood cedar cooking boxes were used -- often these were works of art
one single split cedar board made all four sides of the box

this long board was thinly notched across its width at three separate points

steam was used to make the board pliable and soft enough to bend at the notches

two ends of the board were joined to make the fourth corner

which was fastened with wooden pegs or sewn together

when the box was allowed to dry the wood contracted and closed the joint

making the box entirely waterproof

COASTAL INDIANS WERE HIGHLY SKILLED WOODCARVERS

Carvings made in soft cedar wood recorded the events in the family’s history

tall posts on either side of the door, houses posts and beams were beautifully carved
with small, delicate designs, characters and symbols shown in intricate detail

sometimes part of the post was painted red

this art reflected the life events and myths of previous generations of villagers

Art objects such as house posts, grave posts and a myriad of other carvings

demonstrated the craftsmanship prized among the Coastal natives

Cedar withes (slender and flexible branches) were used to make a sturdy three-ply rope

an example of which was found in a whaler’s longhouse at the Ozette archeological sight

as was a harpoon head made of mussel shell stored in an envelope of cedar bark

Coastal natives lived inside a family history book

figures such as the residents’ Guardian Spirits or legends of the family living in the house

were often displayed as was the tribal mascot
mascots were usually the figure of a bear, raven, eagle or another animal
they represented supernatural powers that had helped the family's ancestors
if a new owner took over a longhouse and no house posts remained available for carving
he would add on and carve his Guardian Spirit and the life events of his family
Totem poles were rarely made by most of the Indians of Washington State
however, wonderful totem poles were carved by the Haida people
who lived in British Columbia's Queen Charlotte Islands (now renamed Haida Gwaii)
and the Tsimshian people of today's British Columbia and Alaska
and Tlingit natives of Alaska
totem pole carving skills eventually were carried down the coast to northern Washington

PLATEAU INDIANS ALSO WERE SKILLED ARTISTS

Plateau Indians were not as materialistic as the Coastal people because they moved so often
natives of the interior could not collect and carry as many things with them
possessions were not as highly prized as they were on the Pacific Coast
however, basket containers and receptacles, often acquired through trade, were used
Decorative art was simple and inconspicuous compared to the coast
woodworking was insignificant compared to the coast
Plateau Indians could not spend the time making beautiful objects
as food was not as readily available
frequent moves and lack of suitable materials discouraged Plateau artists
from building and keeping large art objects

JEWELRY WAS IMPORTANT TO THE PEOPLE OF THE PACIFIC COAST

All Indians enjoyed decorating themselves -- men also wore jewelry
Coastal Indians were strongly attracted to the colorful and ornamental
no costume was complete without jewelry
Coastal people were especially fond of necklaces and bracelets
strings of shells were used as both necklaces for decoration and as money
shells made from animal teeth or tusks, bone, clams and stone were all used for necklaces
beaver teeth, bear claws, clam shells, string of shell fish,
and most highly prized slender, white tuck-shaped marine mollusks
(dentalium), were often used
Natives Americans wore body piercings
nose jewelry was placed in the septum separating the nostrils
lip jewelry, such as fragments of abalone shell and other beautiful shells were inserted
Northern Washington Coastal villagers usually pierced children's noses at about age five
most native children had their ear lobes pierced at about age eight
this procedure took place in connection with receiving a second name

hole made with a bone awl by an old person who was paid for their service
sinew was kept in the hole to prevent it from closing
only wealthy Indian men and women pierced around the rim of the ear
Many Coastal natives adorned themselves with body paint
paint made from colored powders and deer tallow was used for these decorations
paints were used for both ornament and protection of the skin against bad weather
both men and women painted their faces red to prevent chapping
sometimes painting was done with designs related to the individual's Guardian Spirit
Tattooing the body was practiced only by Coastal women
girls at age ten or twelve were tattooed using a gooseberry thorn and charcoal
tattoos were usually placed on the lower arm or the leg just below the knee
these designs were purely decorative -- they had no connection with the spirit world

NORTHWEST NATIVES ENJOYED A VARIETY OF FOOD AND CLOTHING

Native Americans usually wore very little if any clothing during the spring and summer
men below the upper class wore a breech clout or nothing in warm weather
men often went bareheaded
women of middle or poorer classes wore a sash of coiled nettle root tied around the waist
from which strands of twisted inner cedar bark fiber hung to form a knee-length
fringed skirt that gave women the appearance of waddling when they walked
some women wore a six-inch strip of deerskin four feet long as a breech clout
no covering was used for the upper part of the body
Clothing worn by the nobility and at ceremonies was very elaborate and beautiful
upper class women wore a shirt that extended from the shoulders to below the knees
long sleeve shirts worn by these women had strings of shells sewn to the underarms
and often had shells or sea otter fur stitched around the neck
short sleeve shirts worn by upper class women had sleeves to the elbow
which were often trimmed with sea otter fur
leggings that were tied at the knee with straps also were sometimes worn
well-to-do men wore a breech clout and buckskin leggings from the waist to the ankles
leggings were not sewn together like trousers
inner cedar bark was used to make a variety of durable and functional articles of clothing
such as cedar bark tunics and rain hats suitable for the damp climate and water travel
Indians along the west coast, both men and women, went barefoot
Coastal peoples wore two types of basketry hats as protection against the rain:
•large cone-shaped hats with a broad brim which spread out over the shoulders
was worn by most of the Coastal people
known a "cheapool" it made of woven spruce root;
•Chinook people and other tribes along the ocean wore conical shape and brimless hats
made of tightly woven inner cedar bark or spruce fibers and grass fibers

woven with designs of whales and animals -- sometimes with a knob on the top
As the rainy season set in along the Pacific coast
Coastal people used oil from fish to protect their bodies against rain and dampness
oil was rubbed onto the skin as a cosmetic and as a coating to repel rain
women wore a twined fiber cape of cedar bark over a buckskin shirt
which reached to the hip and tied together down the front with a buckskin thong
this outer cover provided added protection from the rain
As the weather became colder and wetter more clothes were added
both men and women of all classes wore two kinds of shirts in cold weather
sometimes they wore a shirt with long sleeves but usually the sleeves were short
woven blankets or animal skin robes also were added in the winter
hides used in producing these robes were either dressed on both sides
or the animal hair was worn to the inside
both genders wore rain capes made of shredded bark or mats, bear skin or seal skin
thrown over the back, spread out over the shoulders and fastened across the chest
usually with animal hair to the outside, but reversed in cold weather
winter moccasins were sewn with animal hair still attached and turned to the inside
most people wore caps of beaver, elk, or deer skin
poor people and slaves wore a plain blanket over the shoulders
Along the western slope of the Cascades walking was more important and more difficult
natives wore leggings and shirts of animal skin to protect them from the underbrush
clothes of buckskin were suitable for mountain life as they were light weight
and easy to move in

CLOTHING OF THE PLATEAU PEOPLE WAS NOT AS VARIED

Both genders of the Plateau Indians wore buckskin smocks, leggings and deerskin moccasins
made of one piece of hide with a seam up the toe
a flap made of tanned animal skin was sewn around the top of the moccasin
a separate piece, often decorated with beads, was sewn over the instep
moccasins were tied with a strap around the ankle
heavy buffalo robes were highly coveted by both men and women
Plateau Indians added variety to their clothing by decorated their garments in many ways
fringe could be added at the bottom of dresses and skirts
ends of the sleeves were accented with the teeth and claws of wild animals, feathers, fur,
porcupine quills, bone tubes from small animals and birds
and scalps of foes killed in battle

VARIETY OF COOKING METHODS MADE MEALS INTERESTING

Cooking fires were started in a fireplace hearth
very dry cottonwood root with a series of notches on one side held the tinder fire starter

tinder was finely shredded cedar bark that was placed in the notches
fire was usually ignited with a hand-drill of very dry cedar
twirling the cedar drill in the cottonwood notch caused the shredded bark to ignite
Cooking methods varied by the meal being prepared and the pleasure of the cook
Coastal Indian women were able to devote some of their creative energy toward cooking
typical native women could easily relate more than 200 recipes
for preparing and combining food staples such as salmon, berries, camas root
and vegetables without exhausting her mental cookbook
during the rainy season along the coast cooking was moved indoors
as the fire was built in the fire pit in the longhouse floor -- one hearth per family;
men often helped with the cooking, serving and cleaning up
especially on ceremonial occasions

Methods of preparing foods varied almost as much as the food supplies:

- poaching food in watertight baskets and boxes was popular with the Coastal Indians
to cook in watertight baskets, fish or small pieces of meat, berries, roots, etc.
were placed in a basket of water into which stones heated by the cooking fire
were dropped to bring the water to a boil
these stones were handled with wooden tongs
after being boiled the fish was placed on a platter
family members stood around the kettle
seashells or spoons made from mountain sheep horn were used
to scoop up the remaining food and broth from the cooking basket or box
or the broth was ladled into serving dishes of bark or wood
as the Indians sat on the ground;
- baking was done frequently along the Pacific coast
a fire pit was dug in the ground and lined with stones
a fire was built in the bottom of the pit
round stones were added to the fire to retain heat
meat was placed atop the stones
leaves were placed over the meat to keep it clean and the hole was filled with dirt
meat was left to cook for the proper amount of time
fish was covered with slabs of split driftwood on which round stones were laid
and the same baking process was used
this method was particularly successful for tough-fiber plants like camas root;
- steaming was accomplished as watertight baskets or boxes held food being prepared
a tight lid held the steam in the cooking basket or box
smooth stones were heated around the fire and picked up with a forked stick
these were placed in the basket or box which was partially filled with water
during steaming other heated stones were add to keep the water boiling
- barbequing (broiling) salmon was done on an upright wooden framework

- salmon was held on the vertical frame by wooden dowels
woven around the upright frame
to sear the salmon and retain the moisture the framework was placed close to the fire
cooking commenced after searing when the fish was moved away from the fire
it would be moved closer to or away from the fire as needed
to maintain the proper cooking temperature;
- drying in the sun and wind resulted in a verity of jerkies being preserved for later use
meat, fish, game and roots were all prepared in this manner
salmon eggs, considered a great winter delicacy, were dried and smoked
sun-drying food along the coast was risky because of the inconsistent southerly wind
and the usually high humidity;
 - smoking meat, fish and eggs required a smokehouse
which cooked and preserved at the same time
smoke houses for curing fish and the drying racks were privately owned
(this distinction between community ownership of the means of catching fish
and family ownership of the means of preserving fish
was misunderstood for decades by lawyers involved in fishing rights cases
who insisted that because Indians shared the fishing weirs
they had no concept of individual property rights
but if there was no way to preserve the fish once it was caught
fishing was of little value
this fact indicates the importance of personal property rights to the Indians)²⁵

COASTAL NATIVES GATHERED FOR MEALS

Only two meals were served a day -- about 9:00 a.m. and again at about 6:00 p.m.
before sitting down to a meal, mats were placed on the floor
to assure guests were completely satisfied men and guests ate first
women and children ate after

Table manners centered on personal cleanliness
necessary because of the use of common serving dishes
each villager washed his hands and dried them on towels made of inner cedar bark
each villager rinsed out their mouth with water
liquids were never drunk during the meal
solid food was picked up with the fingers
at the end of each course, a bucket of water and towel was passed around for washing

SERVING PLATTERS OF THE COAST WERE AN ART FORM

No pottery dishes existed -- both serving platters and individual dishes were made of wood
serving platters shaped like blunt nosed canoes were several feet long

²⁵ Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest*, P. 13.

cooking containers such as boxes and baskets also were used at the “table”
Serving dishes used for parties, feasts and ceremonies were elaborately carved and decorated
these were much more beautiful than every day dishes -- they were works of art
carved slate or wooden bowls were highly polished and inlaid with bits of shell
some bowls were extremely large -- usually constructed in the shape of an animal
and sometimes in the shape of humans
wooden ladles and horn spoons were used for serving
those too poor to own wooden ladles for eating could use clam shells

COASTAL AND PLATEAU NATIVE PEOPLE PRACTICED PERSONAL CLEANLINESS

Cleanliness was extremely important to Coastal Indians -- bathing was a daily ritual
during the bath the body was rubbed with rotted twigs or yew leaves
shredded inner cedar bark was used as a towel
white stones found on river banks were used like soap
Personal grooming care was consistent among all of the natives of the Pacific Northwest
tweezers made from deer horn were used to remove men’s facial hair
combs were made of yew wood and measured about eight inches in length
while the teeth were about three inches long
very little girls wore their hair hanging loose
young girls’ hair was braided tightly to make it grow better
before marriage, a girl’s hair was combed and dressed by her mother or grandmother
women parted their hair down the middle from the forehead to the nape of the neck
their hair hung loose on both sides covering the ears
from there it was braided on each side
ends of the braids were wrapped with buckskin and tied
men and boys parted their hair in the middle
it was tied in a knot with buckskin on the neck
when men went to war, they braided their hair in one braid
and tied the braid to the top of the head with buckskin
when a man’s hair grew too long it was cut off at the waist line
rich men often braided otter skin into their hair for ceremonial occasions
sometimes duck down was put into the hair and painted red

NATIVES AMERICANS ADVANCED THROUGH THE STAGES OF LIFE

Babies were appreciated and enjoyed by everyone -- especially the grandparents
Toddlers explored their world through play
Children began to learn important life skills -- play is the work of children
Quest for a Guardian Spirit provided entry into adulthood
Marriage was arranged for both men and women
Adult natives provided the necessities of life and family stability, enjoyed recreation,

recognized the Spirit World and appreciated the role of The Changer
Old age was a happy time for Indians as their responsibilities diminished
and there were grandchildren

BABIES WERE GREATLY APPRECIATED AND WELL PROVIDED WITH LOVE

New born babies were thought to have come from a land of babies where they lived happily
while there, babies were free from all adult interference and happily enjoyed other babies
Indian babies usually received a series of names throughout their lifetime
almost all native people gave the child a nickname at birth

girls used this name to about age eight

boys used this name to about age ten or twelve

Infancy was a very uncertain time for parents as Indians suffered high rate of infant mortality
they believed that if not kept happy the baby would return to the land of babies

that special place where infants might live and play without adults making demands
babies were very well cared for so they would choose to remain with their parents

Cradleboard, with slight variations, was universally the same for all natives
and for both boys and girls

cradleboard was home for the baby for at least the first year of life

cylinder to hold the baby was attached with strips of buckskin

laced through holes burned in a small flat cedar plank

naked infant was placed inside the cradleboard

shredded talcum powder-like inner cedar bark was used to fill the cradleboard

padded rolls of inner cedar bark were placed under the neck, arm pits

and under the knees

sometimes padded rolls were used to flatten the baby's head

babies were cared for like a valuable treasure as he or she enjoyed complete security

baby was nearly always strapped to the mother's back

and viewed the world over mother's right shoulder

Mother and baby enjoyed a great deal of physical contact

every day infants were taken out of the cradleboard and washed in lukewarm water

mothers massaged their babies daily to make them grow straight and strong

baby was fondled and caressed and wrapped in a fur for warmth

fresh shredded soft inner cedar bark was placed in the cradleboard

and the baby was returned to its familiar secure surroundings

TODDLERS WERE CAREFULLY GUIDED IN THE WAYS OF THE INDIANS

Instruction began early for Indian children on both sides of the Cascade Mountains

at an age when they were able to walk, all Indian toddlers were free to play

games developed needed skills and coordination

Physical punishment was very rare

though they might be rebuked, it was unacceptable for a child to be whipped or spanked
it was believed a child who was abused would likely grow up to abuse their children
Indians also believed punishment did more harm than good
and the child might choose to return to the land of babies
rather parents used praise, ridicule and fear to influence their children's behavior
stories of evil spirits living nearby who would steal bad children were told
Quinault Indians regarded a child as being completely irresponsible up to age five
children younger than that were never punished
Toddlers stayed at home when their mothers had to work away from the village
grandparents provided attention and affection
Indian children became acquainted with their culture, morals, ideals and ethics
while the family was gathered together at night, often around a fire
Story tellers were usually grandfathers and old men but old women told good stories, too
toddlers heard long myths, legends and stories of their village
to illustrate practical lessons and point out what might happen to a disobedient child
Indians had no written language
toddlers discovered how their ancestors had learned all they knew
many of the stories involved animals in the days when they could still talk
children learned early of the frightening creatures who lived in the dark forests
toddlers learned how people came to be on earth
and the agreement with animals to become food
they learned of the traditions and ceremonies, songs, dances and rituals of the people
old people spoke to the child about the Personal Spirit (soul), Guardian Spirits,
Spirit World, and The Changer

CHILDHOOD TRAINING ENCOURAGED PRACTICAL SKILLS

Instructions to children were really just advice given by older people
girls, even when young, had a few chores they were to do for their mothers
but most of their time was their own to build little salmon traps and playhouses
mothers made cedar bark dolls for their daughters
boys were instructed by their fathers regarding what was required to become a man
as soon as they were able boys learned about men's work
Coastal Indian fathers made model canoes for their sons to play with
to prepare the child for the responsibility of canoe ownership
boys were taught to exercise and ignore pain
games provided practice for needed life skills
watching skilled artisans and testing their own skills
was part of an Indian boy's education
Children of the Plateau people received less attention from adults
as more of the family's time was taken up meeting the requirements of life

children were expected to learn self-reliance at a very early age
Learning quickly was encouraged -- discipline usually was an appeal to the child's pride
few restrictions were placed on the socialization of children
it was noted obedient children won the respect and approval of the rest of the villagers
while naughty children risked condemnation and contempt
flattery built pride in a job well done and Indian children, like most people,
were eager for the approval

BOTH GIRLS AND BOYS RECEIVE A SERIES OF NEW NAMES

At about age eight girls received a new name to replace their nickname
a celebration was provided by the parents in honor of the naming ceremony
At about age ten or twelve boys also received a new name and ceremony
When a Guardian Spirit had been received the event also resulted in a new name
Later in life if an Indian became distinguished in some regard
she or he would receive a new last name proclaiming the newly acquired prowess
Some Native Americans earned several names for themselves

PRACTICAL TRAINING FOR GIRLS BEGAN ABOUT AGE EIGHT

Girls were taught by women all of the tasks necessary to provide for everyone in the village
mothers taught girls to cook, clean, make baskets, blankets and clothes, do housework
and all of the other skills necessary to sustain life
girls were taught to be hospitable and to make good wives
older women showed how to dig roots, gather grasses and cedar bark and dry fish
attendance at "classes" was irregular
depending on what work the girls were expected to accomplish at home
but each girl attended lessons until she had learned at least the basic skills
in some villages completed handicraft articles were hung on bushes along popular trails
so they could be admired by the members of the village
families held ceremonies to celebrate the first roots and fruits gathered by their daughters
women of the household provided a feast which included the foods
the girls had gathered
girls served the guests, primarily relatives, but she was not permitted to eat any food
as a demonstration of her understanding that service is more important than self
some of the older guests spoke to the girl emphasizing the virtues of hard work
which leads to great success as an adult

AT PUBERTY GIRLS WERE ISOLATED UNTIL THEY WERE MARRIED

It was believed girls became possessed by a strong spirit that would harm the village
usually girls age twelve or thirteen were secluded in a hut placed some distance away
where they observed how to properly prepare food without offending the Spirit World

Coastal girls were to avoid all men with the exception of relatives until they were married
in some villages girls were secluded in a small compartment in the longhouse
where she was kept isolated -- sometimes for several years
she was allowed to go outside only at night
and then only in secrecy and accompanied by her mother or a slave
she did nothing at all during the day
her continued inactivity and seclusion made her weak and pale
eventually she was unable to do any physical task
these years of cramped-up sitting
sometimes resulted in a partial crippling of the girl's legs
upper-class women often had difficulty walking as adults
these physical problems were valued as marks of the ultimate aristocrat
this was just the kind of girl noble families sought for their sons
these girls were so hidden away that an aura of mystery surrounded them
which was an additional attraction for an eligible suitor

One Plateau Salish native group, the Sinkaietk of the upper Columbia River,
established a house used only by the girls of the village which served two purposes:

- it kept young girls away from the boys;
- it provided a place where girls could learn the skills useful for running a household

girls went there during the day accompanied by older women
old women taught them how to make bags, baskets, blankets, mats and twine
and to do bead and embroidery work

GUARDIAN SPIRIT QUEST MARKED THE CHILD'S ENTRY INTO ADULTHOOD

Every Coastal child had an advisor or guardian
who determined when the child was ready to acquire his or her Guardian Spirit
quest for a Guardian Spirit was usually undertaken in March or April
during stormy weather when the spirits surfaced and were easier to find
it was impossible to receive a Guardian Spirit without doing something personally
to acquire it
women could receive a Guardian Spirit as well as men
but these were less powerful spirits
as women were not physically strong enough to acquire a big spirit
Coastal people could receive the spirit of anything: animals, plants, even inanimate objects
boys and girls at about age thirteen went on a "Spirit Quest" to find their Guardian Spirit
the seeker journeyed into the forest at least five days journey from village
to a remote spot described by the advisor
before the child went out, the advisor set out a marker and told the child where to find it
and return with it to the village as proof the quest had been undertaken
Before setting out on the Spirit Quest the child must cleanse himself or herself outwardly

by rubbing their body with bark and nettles until blood removed the smell of grease
which was offensive to the spirits
it was also necessary for the seeker to cleanse himself or herself inwardly
very little would be eaten for several days before the quest began
and the seeker was given no provisions for use during the quest
a cedar belt was tightly wound around the waist so hunger would not be felt so keenly
While journeying on the Spirit Quest the seeker must remain awake
as spirits may appear at any time
to stay awake the child might dive into water, build piles of rocks, tend a fire at night
and play games with the spirits
camp was set up in the woods by the seeker at the location identified by the advisor
here a fire had to be built and tended to make sure the fire did not burn out
he or she had traveled several days without eating and was faint from hunger
from this place, the youth went out in every direction searching for a Guardian Spirit
far from friends and the village the seeker was filled with fear
woods were filled with unknown spirits and monsters heard of since early childhood
it was possible the young person might accidentally anger a spirit
When the Guardian Spirit appeared, it took the form of a vision
which sang and danced for the seeker
this spirit must be correctly identified and the spirit song and spirit dance must be learned
and the young person may be instructed only once
When these tasks were accomplished, Coastal native seekers returned to their village
but their Guardian Spirit would not remain permanently
rather it would make its presence known randomly or on special occasions
fear of committing an unspeakable and forbidden act that antagonized the Spirit World
restrained the seeker from cheating regarding their vision
Seeker began to test the Guardian Spirit to see if it had been correctly identified
if the child developed gifts and talents along the lines of the suspected spirit
the seeker became increasingly sure that that spirit's aid had been acquired

FOR COASTAL PEOPLE ACQUIRING A GUARDIAN SPIRIT WAS KEY TO MATURING

Coastal seekers did not speak of the experiences encountered during their spirit quest
except to his or her mother or another trusted adult woman
who began to prepare a ceremonial costume representing the Guardian Spirit
women of the village collectively began to weave a long rope of inner cedar bark
Seeker's Guardian Spirit Dance was the nearest thing to a religious ceremony
that natives experienced
on the selected day, the seeker's family invited other villagers to a feast
to celebrate the young person's finding a Guardian Spirit
child would enter the longhouse with his or her mother or other female relative

long rope woven of inner cedar bark by village women was tied to the seeker's waist
older woman painted the seeker's face black with soot and charcoal
to represent the child's death
this child must die before the adult man or woman could exist
next the child dressed in a costume prepared by the child's mother or another woman
to represent the suspected Guardian Spirit
if the costume was correct, the seeker would become possessed by the Guardian Spirit
he or she would burst from the building and run wildly around the village
friends and other children took turns running along behind holding the long rope
to keep the child from harm by running into a tree or boulder or off a cliff
during the dance other members of the village feasted
men sang their Spirit Songs and danced their Spirit Dances
to help the young person remain in contact with their Guardian Spirit
child continued to run and dance wildly for several hours until collapsing in exhaustion
while the young person was unconscious, the men met to discuss the performance
if the performance had been successful, when the child awakened
his or her face had been cleaned of the soot and charcoal
this represented the birth of a new adult
the child had crossed into adulthood with all of its rights and privileges
A new adult name was acquired by abstaining from food for several days
until the Guardian Spirit appeared in the youth's dreams
as an animal, a bird, or some mysterious object
Sometimes two or more Spirit Quests were necessary to find the Guardian Spirit
on rare occurrences, the spirit was never found
in which case the seeker was always treated as an inferior in the village

COMING OF AGE FOR THE PLATEAU INDIANS WAS A KEY STEP IN MATURING

As on the Pacific coast, the Plateau Indians' quest for the Guardian Spirit
that would provide a powerful ally to help and guide the individual throughout life
was a rite of passage conducted at about the same age as among the Coastal people
and at about the same time of year
quest for a Guardian Spirit among the Plateau people was limited to animal spirits
"Spirit Quest" to find a Guardian Spirit served as a method of leaving behind childhood
in the Interior spirit guidance was sought by all boys and perhaps one-third of the girls
Once a Plateau Indian received his or her Guardian Spirit the seeker returned to the village
and tried to forget the experience -- talking about the Spirit Quest was unacceptable
After several years, the Guardian Spirit might return and confirm its existence
when this occurred, the Indian became ill
during the illness, a Shaman was called who would reveal the true cause of the illness
the Shaman would help the patient remember the Spirit Song and Spirit Dance

after the spirit was correctly identified and the song remembered,
a ceremony was held to honor the acquiring of the Guardian Spirit
next Winter Ceremony would also see a performance of the song and dance

NEZ PERCE SPIRIT QUEST WAS UNDERTAKEN AT A YOUNG AGE

Every ten-year-old Nez Perce Indian was sent into the mountains to seek a Guardian Spirit
this sacred ritual was considered the most important undertaking in an individual's life
To find the Guardian Spirit the child was instructed to climb one of the highest peaks
once at the top the seeker was to build a pile of stones and sit down beside it
all of seeker's attention was to be focused on the purpose of the vigil
the seeker was not to eat or drink anything and was to try to stay awake
after three or four days alone in the wilderness the seeker usually fell into a fitful sleep
during which an animal spirit appeared and gave the child a name
this spirit taught the seeker a sacred song which must be learned
from then on the Guardian Spirit would protect the child from danger
and endow him or her with whatever skills or physical qualities
were appropriate to that particular spirit

MARRIAGE WAS A SIGIFICANT LIFE STEP FOR COASTAL YOUNG WOMEN

Marriages between neighboring villages were frequent
and was an extremely important event on the coast
brides were married as arranged by their parents at about age fourteen or fifteen
young women were taught to look on marriage with a rich man as their ultimate goal
young men married at sixteen or seventeen
among the slave-owning Salish natives marriages usually were arranged
by the groom's parents -- but grooms usually had a voice their selection of his bride
Marriage was a contract between two families
which affected and involved far more than the couple
both sets of parents checked the prospective in-law's character, social standing
and wealth
marriages were made to improve social and economic standing of the family
parents wanted their children to marry into the same class or higher
both families were extremely particular about the choice of partner for their child
prestige was an important factor in the match
among Chinook Indians marriage was especially seemly if both parties were flatheads
by mingling the best blood of the tribes, an aristocratic class was created on the coast
Young women were not always ostracized for becoming pregnant
if an unmarried woman became pregnant, she had to tell her family who the father was
if girl's parents consented to the union, the son-in-law stayed with the bride's family
thus demonstrating the acceptance of both families

if the expectant father was of a lower class and the girl insisted on staying with him
the bride's father was shamed and might send them both away to live
if the girl's parents vehemently objected to the union
the expectant father would have to pay a tribute to the girl's parents
if he failed to pay the fine the expectant father might be killed by the girl's family

COASTAL WEDDINGS INVOLVED A GREAT DEAL OF GIFT GIVING

Coastal weddings, particularly among wealthy and aristocratic families,
were always accompanied by many exchanges of reciprocal gifts
parents of the groom usually took the initiative
this giving of gifts was an exchange rather than a payment for the bride
common people who could not afford gifts were married by mutual agreement
but with no wedding ceremony

Wedding ceremonies among Salish people were very specific²⁶

young man's family sent out a discreet proposal of marriage to the family of a young lady
in hope of gaining a positive response
if this proposal was found to be acceptable by the parents of the prospective bride
the groom's father or some other close male relative made a formal marriage proposal
if assurances of acceptance of the proposal were made the young man and his family
set out in canoes loaded with gifts and paddled to the young woman's village
when they arrived the door to the bride's longhouse was always barred to them
then began a long and repetitious series of speeches praising both families
and stressing the desirability of the match
when the door was finally opened, negotiations immediately stalled
groom's relatives and speakers departed leaving the young fellow alone
sitting on a pile of blankets inside the door
he sometimes had to sit there several days, nearly motionless, eating nothing
his prospective bride was nowhere to be seen
when the groom's relatives returned there were more speeches
after each flattering speech the girl's family presented the speaker with a blanket
but made no other comment
it was a matter of prestige for the family of the bride to be able to later boast
how difficult they had made it for the young man's family
finally, an agreement to marry was reached

COASTAL NEWLY MARRIED COUPLES ESTABLISHED A PERMANENT RESIDENCE

Coastal society was patriarchal -- bride and groom moved in with the groom's family
although there might be a short stay at the home of the bride first
After the marriage the groom's blankets and mats became common property

²⁶ Carolyn Niethammer, *Daughters of the Earth*. P. 81-82.

of the husband and wife

however, his hunting and fishing gear remained the man's property

whatever handicraft a woman had made was kept as her own

she could sell or exchange her artistic works and keep the returns for herself

Coastal Indians had plural marriages

if a man was rich enough having more than one wife was accepted

but in practice only a Shaman could afford more than two wives

additional wives were taken without ceremony

it was unnecessary for a man to desert his wife to secure another woman

plural wives had a separate individual fire in the longhouse

husbands usually preferred marrying the sisters of his first wife

achieving greater harmony with his in-laws and more consideration for his children

most business dealings were among family members

it was an advantage to have as large a family as possible

PLATEAU MARRIAGE CEREMONIES WERE NOT AS INVOLVED AS ON THE COAST

Plateau natives not have the abundance of material wealth to show off or give away

Inland tribes did not hold formal marriage ceremonies -- weddings were simple

during a ceremonial dance men and women at a dance formed two lines

facing each other

leaving his line the man approached a woman he desired

he placed a stick on her shoulder and danced by her side

if she refused him she threw the stick off and he had to fall back into the men's line

if she allowed him to dance with the stick on her shoulder until the end of the dance

she had accepted him and they were married

elopements seldom occurred except during bison hunting season

when everyone was busy with the hunt

in this case the young man usually chose his bride and simply persuaded the girl

to come to his father's camp and remain there

they were then regarded as married

sometimes the girl's parents would persuade a young man to stay in their camp

with their daughter for a few days -- this also was considered a marriage

if an unmarried young woman gave birth to a baby, it was a disgrace to her family

if the father was known, she became his wife

COASTAL AND PLATEAU COUPLES OCCASIONALLY SUFFERED MARITAL STRIFE

Problems such as spouse abuse were resolved by the victim's family

in the event of mistreatment of the bride her family would seek vengeance

a wife, for instance, might inform her brother, father, or other trusted male relative

of the conditions under which she suffered

a visit to her husband would result in a stern warning to stop the abuse
further hostile action by the groom could result in the Shaman of the wife's family
declaring war on the husband and his family
more usually the bride's family hired a Shaman to inflict an evil spirit
on the abusive husband
this evil spirit would not be removed until a promise to reform was delivered

DIVORCE OCCURRED ONLY RARELY IN COASTAL AND PLATEAU MARRIAGE

Husbands did not usually leave their wives -- plural marriages were acceptable
if a man thought his wife had been unfaithful²⁷

he was allowed to clip off the tip of her nose and ears to make her forever unattractive
in the case of adultery, the guilty man was most likely to be killed by the angry husband
although the adulterer often bought himself off with gifts to the husband
when rape occurred, the punishment for the male was death or marriage to his victim
Divorce was simple but uncommon because of the complications it created
disagreements could sometimes be resolved peaceably
however, if the husband abandoned his family or he sent his wife to her parent's home
it created a vast number of complications for both the husband's and wife's families
all of the bridal gifts had to be returned to the bride's father
these gifts, of course, had been further distributed to friends and relatives
and therefore were difficult to get back
sometimes the wife would choose to return to her parent's home
when a woman left her husband, the husband retained all of their property
but a Shaman could be called upon to cast a spell on the husband

OLD AGE WAS A HAPPY TIME FOR NATIVE AMERICANS

Elderly people were revered for their knowledge and skills and their service to the village
older natives were free of the drudgery of daily tasks taken over by the next generation
and, of course, there were the village children and their own grandchildren to care for
Looking after, educating and training these children provided meaning and purpose to life
grandparents repeated the legends and stories of the village for the children
to provide a link with the past, the children's role in the future and the Spirit World

AS DEATH NEARED PERSONAL ITEMS WERE GIVEN AWAY

Normally among the Indians, death was anticipated and prepared for
when an Indian could no longer work personal property and slaves were given away
a man's canoes and hunting dogs were given to his son or other relative
a woman's blankets, baskets and other works of art
were given to her children or grandchildren

²⁷ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*, P. 16.

Occasionally, a person could die and come back to life again in a few days
especially with the assistance of a very powerful Shaman

AT DEATH THE PERSONAL SPIRIT (SOUL) WENT TO THE LAND OF THE DEAD

Indians did not believe in heaven or hell -- no devils or angels existed for them
human life was thought to follow much the same pattern as the lives of other animals
each species had a land of its own where they would return at death
Indians universally believed in the existence of a Personal Spirit or soul
which at death became a ghost that followed the sun into the "Land of the Dead"
where there was comfort, friends, family and plenty to eat
Ghosts traveled by one of two paths that led to the Land of the Dead
a short path went to the left and the longer path went to the right
left route was taken by those who died suddenly
long path was followed by someone who had been sick for a long time
two rivers had to be crossed on the way to the Land of the Dead
first river, which was very swift, was bridged by a fallen tree
second river was approached from the East where the ghost arrived at a low bank
Land of the Dead lay across the second river to the West beyond a high bank
this river had to be crossed in a canoe

LAND OF THE DEAD WAS MUCH LIKE LIFE ON EARTH

Ghosts in the Land of the Dead lived the same kind of lives as people on Earth
babies returned to a kind of "Land of Babies" where they were very happy
houses in the Land of the Dead were the same as on Earth
men people hunted and fished and women produced wonderful works of art
dead of various tribes and villages had separate places in the Land of the Dead
however, when it was low tide on earth it was high tide in the land of the ghosts
It was a concern that the Personal Spirit (soul) could become lonely in the Land of the Dead
ghosts could return to Earth to haunt the longhouses or village where they had lived
and to complete unfinished business, or to visit friends and family
or to retrieve some treasured possession of great significance left behind
if a ghost wanted something it could not take with them at death,
it lingered around the longhouse but only came out at night
and never when the moon was shining
to discourage ghosts from returning a large fire was built
the person's remaining property was burned to allow the spirit of those possessions
to travel to the Land of the Dead
occasionally slaves might be sacrificed to prevent the possibility of loneliness
if death had occurred in a longhouse, that house was destroyed or moved
even if it was a large house occupied by many families

Families did not invite ghosts to return because they were of no further use
and the village was better left alone
in contrast however, the spirits of babies, whales and salmon were welcome as guests
every inducement was made to recall them back to the village and to please them

FUNERAL SERVICES WERE TO PROTECT THE PERSONAL SPIRIT OF THE DESEASED

Funeral services were dedicated to speed the Personal Spirit (soul) to the Land of the Dead
and to provide the ghost a welcome there upon its arrival
Funeral services also were to protect those remaining from ghosts with unfinished business
and from spirits that had become evil due to some abuse or insult inflicted by the living
Funerals were conducted by an undertaker who was usually a Shaman
who received a fee for attending to the burial
Shamans eulogized the deceased and laid the ghost to rest
Chief mourners, sometimes paid professionals, cut their hair short as a sign of mourning
if the deceased was a person of great importance, the entire village cut their hair
after the death services, the chief mourners had to be ceremonially cleansed
to remove the influence of the deceased person's ghost

COASTAL NATIVE BURIAL CUSTOMS VARIED BY VILLAGE AND STATUS

Usually the body, dressed in formal clothing, was wrapped in skins, blankets and mats
and was placed in its final resting place with the head toward the West
strings of shell money were put on a wealthy person
some of the most treasured possessions of the deceased
were broken into small pieces, burned or destroyed and placed with the body
to allow that object's spirit to accompany the deceased to the Land of the Dead
Coastal Natives burial customs took many forms which varied from village to village
along Puget Sound, the Indians spent much of their lives in canoes
"burial" usually was above ground when a canoe was used as a coffin
both women and men were placed in their own canoe
canoe and boxes of personal possessions were raised off the ground
and lashed to branches high in a tree
or placed on a scaffold on posts out of the reach of predatory animals
bottom of the canoe was covered with cedar shakes
holes were bored in the bottom to let rain water out
after a year some villages re-buried the remains
under the canoe or in a family cemetery
some Coastal Indians placed the remains in a basket or cedar box rather than in a canoe
One cemetery located on a high, isolated cliff on the Columbia River West of Longview
was named Mount Coffin
another, a rocky islet close to the Oregon shore, was known as Coffin Rock

BURIAL OF COASTAL LOWER CLASSES WAS IN FORMAL

Slaves or persons without importance in the community were disposed of without ceremony
sometimes the deceased was laid on a platform built in a tree as a canoe was too costly
or the body was placed in crevices, rocks, or huts with gabled roofs
Very poor slaves could be thrown in a hole and covered with Earth
or sometimes they were simply placed or left in an unfrequented location in the woods

PLATEAU NATIVE BURIAL CUSTOMS VARIED GREATLY

Plateau Indians believed the dead went to a land in the sky
but if the burial ceremony was not properly followed,
the Personal Spirit (soul) would roam the Earth as a ghost
disposal of the dead was convenient for the inland natives
graves or mounds of rock were used to safeguard the remains from predatory animals
Plateau natives took advantage of rock slides and gravel banks
the body was placed in a basket or box and left at the base of a landslide
rocks above were loosened which caused a landslide to cascade down on the remains
sometimes their dead were buried in graves in a pit -- matting covered the floor
vertical cedar planks were placed around the sides of the pit to hold back the earth
deceased's body and personal possessions were placed in the grave
these were covered with matting and the grave was filled with Earth
stones were placed on top of the grave
mourners burned the projecting pieces of vertical cedar planking at ground level
it did not take long for the desert wind and sand to conceal the grave completely
some Interior Indians used a circular grave three to five feet deep
which was covered by a layer of poles on which stones were heaped
ornaments and other property were buried with the dead
after they became available to Plateau people, horses were often killed over the grave
Columbia River Plateau Indians used low knolls deposited by the wind as burial places
wind soon removed all scent and concealed the location of the grave from predators
Lower Columbia Indians burial customs revolved around an island in the Columbia River
called "memaloose" (Cayuse for death) or death island that served as a burial site
(the largest island below The Dalles, Oregon is still known as Memaloose Island)
Wishrams, a Chinook group living at The Dalles, were the only natives of the Plateau²⁸
to use low hut-like structures about ten feet wide and six feet high
made of poles, slabs of wood and bark with a shed roof
constructed over a shallow pit on islands in the Columbia River
bodies piled to a height of three or four feet were laid with heads toward the West
carved wooden images were sometimes set up around the hut

²⁸ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*, P. 20.

these structures and their contents were identified by Lewis and Clark (1805)
these graveyards with their ghostly trophies were a grim sight for the explorers
on one island they counted thirteen burial huts and named it "Sepulcher Island"²⁹
other Chinook Indians had various methods of disposing of the body of the deceased
usually the remains were wrapped in a blanket -- often in a sitting position
some tribes used burial canoes raised on a scaffold atop cross pieces laid on four posts
the canoe was roped into place on the scaffold or tied into a tree with hazel switches
often the burial canoe was covered with another canoe
other times the burial canoe was set under the trees in the forest
and a shed built covering the canoe and its body
when a canoe was not used, the body was wrapped in a blanket
and laid on a scaffold about three feet above the ground
over the scaffold was constructed a wooden shed with pitch or gable roof
no carvings or painting were placed on the grave shed
instead, a ceremonial stick which had been used by the deceased in spirit dancing
was often set beside the grave

AFTER DEATH NATIVE CUSTOM PROVIDED FOR THE SPOUSE OF THE DECEASED

Widows frequently married their former husband's brother or cousin
if the widow did not marry one her husband's relatives
she returned to her childhood home with her children
after a few years she could marry into another family
Widowers allowed several years to elapse after the death of his wife before remarrying
often widowers married his deceased wife's sister
to assure his children would be well looked after

MENTION OF THE NAME OF THE DEAD WAS A SERIOUS CRIME

For a specific number of years after death the living disassociated themselves from the dead
because just saying the name of the dead could beckon the ghost back to Earth
deceased person was always referred to as the relative of a living person
if the name of the dead was accidentally mentioned
the offender had to pay the relatives of the deceased
Indians never gave a dead person's name to the living until after several years had passed

PLATEAU INDIANS ACQUIRE THE HORSE IN THE EARLY 1700s

Horses were brought to North America by Christopher Columbus
during his second expedition -- 1493
Later arriving Spanish conquistadors (soldiers) also brought horses with them
when a Spanish conquistador died his horses were allowed to roam free

²⁹ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*, P. 17.

over the following centuries wild herds of horses migrated north
or were driven north by Indians who captured them for their use as pack animals
Horses arrived in the Pacific Northwest in approximately 1710
first Plateau Indians to acquire the horse were reported to be Shoshone (or Snake) Indians
who lived along the Snake River and its tributaries
Shoshone Indians became the distributor of horses to their neighboring tribes

CAYUSE INDIANS ACQUIRE THE HORSE

Cayuse Indians were the first of the Plateau people to own large numbers of horses
according Indian oral tradition Cayuse scouts approached a group of Shoshone Indians
on a tributary of the Snake River
these scouts were bewildered to see their enemies riding on large deer or elk
even more confusing, the prints left by these animals were not split like deer or elk
but rather were round and solid
Cayuse scouts arranged a truce to trade for some of these creatures
Cayuse natives returned to their village nearly naked
but accompanied by a mare and a stallion
Cayuse name remains permanently attached to these tough, little horses

HORSES REVOLUTIONIZED THE LIVES OF CAYUSE INDIANS

Horses began to be used by Indians as pack animals
they became the most frequently used method of travel
for these people and their possessions
no longer restricted to what they could carry or what their dogs could pull,
Cayuse Indians moved into new areas to hunt, trade, fight and capture slaves
they traveled across the Rocky Mountains as far east as the Great Plains
and south as far as California
Cayuse horse herds rapidly multiplied as a result of skillful breeding and raids on other tribes
Cayuse who owned fifteen to twenty horses was considered poor
wealthy families controlled horse herds of 2,000 or more by the early 1800s
Cayuse natives began to take on the role of middlemen in the increasingly extensive trade
between the Indians of the Great Plains and those of the Pacific Coast
they adopted elements of Plains Indian culture into their own
acquiring the Plains natives' style of clothing and personal ornamentation,
they learned new methods of hunting and new ways of packing and transporting goods
conical teepees covered with buffalo hides were added to their housing options
new concept of selecting a chief based on his skills as a warrior came from Plains Indians

NEZ PERCE INDIANS DEVELOP THEIR OWN BREED OF HORSES

Nez Perce Indians acquired horses from the Shoshone natives

Nez Perce land was better-suited to raising horses than that of the Shoshones
it was better protected from Indian raiding parties trying to add to their own herds
Nez Perce tribesmen became especially sophisticated and excellent horsemen
many historians believe the Nez Perce were the first to selectively improve their horses
they attained heavier animals brought from Mexican
and Spanish ranches in California
they bred horses to develop specific traits such as intelligence, speed and courage
by keeping the best and trading away those that were less desirable
Nez Perce developed the spotted coats unique to their breed
their horses became lean, long-necked, clean-limbed animals
that featured narrower shoulders and hindquarters and a longer back
their horses were fast with a smooth-running gait and remarkable endurance
they also were excellent jumpers
Nez Perce horses were developed for specific tasks such as tribal horses suitable for trade,
family horses, race horses, hunting and war horses
Nez Perce horse herds multiplied into the thousands -- their prized stock was envied
these Indians counted their wealth in horses -- some chiefs owned 4,000 to 6,000
these vast herds were protected by methods later adopted by stockmen
large herds were divided and placed on several ranges with riders watching over them
occasionally the herd was rounded up
Nez Perce became known as a most affluent of the Plateau tribes

PLATEAU INDIANS DEVELOPED THEIR OWN RIDING EQUIPMENT

Plateau people used the materials readily available to control their horses while riding
bridles were made by twisting horsehair into rope that was tied around horse's lower jaw
saddles were made of a pad of buckskin stuffed with horsehair
saddle cinch was placed under the horse's belly to hold the saddle on the horse
cinch was made of horsehair and strips of rawhide
stirrups were made of wood covered with elk or buckskin applied wet
this was made durable and stretched tight by drying
Women rode well and took part in horse races
women's wooden riding saddles had a high pommel in the front and the back
front pommel had a prong on which to hang the rider's possessions

PLATEAU INDIANS' NOMADIC LIFE COVERED A FAR-RANGING AREA

Horses gave the Interior natives the means to move quickly and easily
this greater mobility made life a great deal easier – these Indians became more nomadic
People ranged over a very large area as they followed the food supply in seasonal migrations
spring and summer were spent along the rivers fishing and socializing
and in the hills gathering roots, berries and plants

trading among Plateau tribes and even with Coastal villagers became more extensive
native gatherings and trade fairs were more easily reached
these became increasingly frequent and better attended
fall and winter were spent in protected locations where game could be taken as food
Some tribes joined the Plains Indians in buffalo hunts on the Great Plains
Cayuse, Nez Perce, Spokanes and others conducted their own great buffalo hunts
bison hunts usually involved collisions with the bloodthirsty Blackfoot Indians
battles were usually preceded by a war dance to assure help from the Spirit World
as a result of these contacts the culture of the Plains people was further adopted
Plateau Indians began to live in lodges instead of huts

PLATEAU INDIANS BECAME EXPERT AT HUNTING WITH HORSES

Plateau people could hunt with bow and arrows by stalking or running game with horses
they rode past the victim on the right side and shot an arrow into the animal's heart
although a lance was sometimes used
when flint-lock muskets became available to Indians as a by-product of trade
hunters acquired remarkable skill in reloading while riding at full speed
hunters dropped a charge of powder from the powder horn into his palm
then into the muzzle of the musket
next a musket ball was taken from the supply carried in the hunter's mouth
finally, the charge was tamped tightly with a ramrod

PLATEAU PEOPLE WERE MORE WARLIKE THAN NATIVES ALONG THE COAST

Wars were fought to seize hunting lands or root and berry fields controlled by other tribes
and, of course, to steal horses
but major fishing grounds were neutral sites
fighting was not allowed while the fish were running
War dances were inter-tribal because of alliances of tribes against common enemies
after the arrival of the horse Plateau war rituals were borrowed from the Plains Indians³⁰
several kinds of dances were associated with war:
•parade dance to gather recruits for battle;
•dance of the warriors to seek spirit protection;
•dance of the women during the absence of the war party;
•dance of the returning warriors;
•victory dance in their home camp
Like Plains Indians, a Flathead and Nez Perce man's war record fixed his social position³¹
which was based on specific acts of bravery in the face of the enemy called "coups"
risk of injury or death was required to count as a coup

³⁰ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*, P. 20.

³¹ Cecil Dryden, *Dryden's History of Washington*, P. 19.

any blow struck against the enemy counted as a coup,
but the most prestigious acts included touching an enemy warrior
with the hand, bow, or with a coup stick -- then escaping unharmed
touching the first enemy to die in battle or touching the enemy's defensive works
also counted as coup
stealing an enemy's weapons or horses tied up to his lodge in camp counted
escaping unharmed while collecting coup was considered a higher honor
than being wounded in the attempt
if a warrior was wounded in the attempt, he was required to paint the coup feather red
as an indication of a lesser achievement
coups were indicated by notches on a coup stick only by the Flathead and Nez Perce
on special occasions braves related their successes by "counting coups"

ARRIVAL OF EUROPEANS CHANGED THE LIVES OF NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS

East coast Indians were responsible to some extent for many concepts of American freedom
Indians highly valued "**all of those things which got attached to the Bill of Rights**"³²
they had already developed the traditions of public-meetings, free speech and democracy
Native Americans also contributed food, vocabulary and place names to the white culture
from earliest colonial times
many white and black newcomers chose to live an Indian lifestyle
frontiersmen were quite taken by the extent to which Indians enjoyed freedom
as individuals³³

WHITE TRADERS AND EXPLORERS CHANGED THE INDIANS OF THE NORTHWEST

Arrival of early sea otter traders introduced new tools to the Indian culture
metal tools made it easier to make objects from stone, wood and bone
canoe making became easier with axes and hatchets although the old designs remained
it took less time and effort to fall a tree and shape the cedar log
because of this it became possible for more Indians to own canoes
most of the art works displayed in museums today were made after fir traders arrived
Later arriving beaver traders further changed the Indian way of life
ironically, to Native American eyes whites were the nomads
native economy changed from hunter-gatherers to suppliers of beaver and animal pelts
Indians became increasingly dependent on the trade goods supplied to them

CHINOOK JARGON EXPANDED TO INCLUDE THE LANGUAGE OF EUROPEANS

Native trade language of "Chinook Jargon" was first reported by Captain George Vancouver
when he visited Grays Harbor -- 1792

³² James Lowen, *Lies My Teacher Told Me*, P. 103

³³ James Lowen, *Lies My Teacher Told Me*, P. 101.

Chinook and Salish languages were too difficult to pronounce for whites to use successfully with the coming of sea traders Spanish, English and Russian words were added to the native trade vocabulary later arrival of land traders added French vocabulary to the mix as European languages became enmeshed with Chinook and Nootka a new trade language that kept the name Chinook Jargon was the result Chinook Jargon made communication possible among Indian peoples and white traders alike however, Chinook Jargon eventually destroyed the use of many ancient native tongues

SOCIAL MORALITY FOR COASTAL AND PLATEAU INDIANS WAS ALTERED

Development of commercialized relations with white trappers and traders caused Coastal natives to relax their social restraints sea otter seeking mariners and later fur traders disrupted natives' moral convictions parents sometimes traded their daughters and husbands their wives for wealth during the summer Indian women camped near trading posts and forts when fur trading brigades arrived at a locale, native women swarmed in boat-loads of women appeared and forced their intentions on the whites it became difficult to keep fur company employees from Indian huts in addition to airborne diseases such as measles and whooping cough venereal diseases spread unchecked among the natives who lacked any immunity adult and infant death rates increased at a terrible rate as epidemics ran rampant Chinook natives were reduced from 15,000 when maritime traders first arrived (1792) to about 300 in (1854)

LEWIS AND CLARK CROSS THE CONTINENT TO THE PACIFIC COAST

Lewis and Clark's "Core of Discovery" gave Plateau Indians their first contact with whites this expedition camped with the Cayuse people at the mouth of the Walla Walla River -- late October 1805 Core of Discovery members reached the Pacific coast later that same month Lewis and Clark's expedition again visited with the Cayuse people -- June 6, 1806 as they returned overland to the east coast Cayuse were curious about the explorers and were particularly interested in their weapons there were practical reasons for being receptive to these powerful strangers while their horse herds had multiplied, they themselves remained at about 500 people access to new weapons could assure Cayuse dominance over other Plateau tribes new trade goods also opened grand new opportunities for economic expansion Plateau Indians were more fortunate than the Indians of the Pacific coast after the arrival of Lewis and Clark's "Core of Discovery" the primary contact with white strangers was with fur traders and half-breeds who took Indian wives next major contact was with Christian missionaries

in the interior of the United States airborne and venereal diseases were not as rampant as they were along the Pacific coast which was visited by sea traders

PLATEAU NATIVES SOUGHT ADVANCED TECHNOLOGIES

After contact with the white culture, Plateau Indians actively sought out missionaries two native delegations, primarily Nez Perce, journeyed east to request missionaries to instruct them in reading and writing

however, rather than the white man's religion they were interested in acquiring "better medicine" to increase their personal power and tribal prestige

First attempt by whites to communicate with the Indians in their native language was undertaken by Christian missionary Rev. Henry Spalding at Lapwai Mission -- 1837

INDIANS AND WHITES HELD DIFFERING VIEWS REGARDING TRADE³⁴

Hostility between the Indians and settlers who followed the traders and trappers arose pioneers were primarily farmers who did not enjoy trade fairs

and endless dickering for bargains

which among the native people bargaining was a basic part of conducting trade for Indians, trade in addition to being profitable was just plain fun

it provided an exciting opportunity to visit with other people

NATIVE AMERICANS ARE DEFEATED IN THE WAR FOR CULTURAL DOMINATION

Arrival of pioneers and soldiers destroyed the life known to the Coastal and Plateau Indians traders and trappers valued the skills and expertise of the natives, but later arrivals did not instead they brought new diseases, religions, mores and technologies

to the people who stood in the way of their effort to develop farming as the new way of life

Indian villages and tribes were never able to organize close alliances to work together in opposition to the white invasion

even uncoordinated action by village and tribe members was seldom achieved

Treaties written of 1854 and 1855 forced Indians to change their way of life to conform to the demands of the new cultures imposed upon them

To complicate the detailed and confusing legal precedents imposed by the treaties

Washington Territory Governor Isaac Stevens insisted they be written in Chinook Jargon which was developed as a trade language composed of Indian and European words

legal concepts were far beyond the vocabulary available in the trade language this appears odd as almost all Pacific Northwest Indians spoke adequate English

Indians, struggled to keep their traditional way of life

for instance, after the arrival of the pioneer immigration,

Nez Perce bought foot-sore but well-bred horses

³⁴ Vine Deloria, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest*, P. 10.

that were used to further improve their herds
whites named the beautifully spotted horses “Appaloosa” in the 1870s
from three words: “a Palouse horse”³⁵

Appaloosa horses were taken away from the Nez Perce Tribe in 1877
when the last of a band of Nez Perce fleeing from United States jurisdiction
were surrounded by the U.S. Cavalry along the Canadian border
and they were forced to surrender
remaining Nez Perce horses were spread across the West to Indians and whites alike

NATIVE ART CONTINUES TO DISPLAY THE RICHNESS OF INDIAN CULTURE

Many Indian traditions and art forms still survive as tributes to native cleverness and skill
traditions and art forms of Northwest people are currently experiencing a positive revival
traditional items such as clothing, bags and baskets and other items are being made
woodworking continues to be an important cultural activity for Coastal people today
although some knowledge of the traditional arts has been lost
practicing those skills which remain continues to be an important part of Indian life
mothers and grandmothers decorate children’s costumes for celebrations and dances
beaded items, such as drums, woven bags and mats and other crafts are used
in traditional celebrations and for special occasions such as the Spirit Dance
native carvings continue to provide beautiful and fanciful art objects of great merit

UNITED STATE GOVERNMENT SIGNS TREATIES WITH NATIVE AMERICANS

President George Washington’s new nation was surrounded by enemies
creation of the new nation had been ratified by a treaty with Great Britain
Treaty of Paris ending the American Revolution was signed -- September 3, 1783
but the boundaries of the United States remained in doubt
by definition a treaty is an agreement under international law
entered into by sovereign states and international organizations
when the architects of the American government created the U.S. Constitution,
they clearly recognized that treaties along with the Constitution itself
are the supreme law of the land
Indian people and Indian country loomed as a large threat that challenged national growth
George Washington’s Administration signed its first Indian Treaty -- August 3, 1795
with the Shawnee, Miami, Ottawa, Chippewa, Iroquois, Sauk and Fox
following the natives’ loss at the Battle of Fallen Timbers a year earlier
Washington dealt with Indians as foreign nations rather than as domestic subjects
primary goal of Washington’s Indian policy was to acquire Indian lands
in that he succeeded
his second goal, of far less importance to Washington and his government,

³⁵ Cassandra Tate, *Cayuse Indians*, Essay 10365, HistoryLink.org, April 3, 2013.

was to establish just policies for dealings with Indian people
Because treaties recognized Indians as living in independent nations
recognized Indian tribes have a government-to-government relationship with the U.S.
this tribal sovereignty assures certain federal benefits, services and protections
are maintained
this tribal sovereignty recognizes tribes have the right:
•to form their own government,
•to exclude people from tribal land,
• to make and enforce their own civil and criminal laws,
• to determine tribal membership, tax,
•to zone their land,
•to license and regulate activities within their jurisdiction
furthermore, federally recognized tribes possess both the right and the authority
to regulate activities on their lands independently from state government control
they can enact and enforce stricter or more lenient laws and regulations
that differ from the laws of the state that surrounds their reservation
states have no authority over tribal governments
except when that control is expressly authorized by Congress

CURRENT NATIVE AMERICAN POPULATION FACES DIFFICULT CHALLENGES

Approximately 124,000 Indians live in present-day Washington State
they are divided into five major language groups
and twenty-nine federally recognized tribes
Recognition status is granted by treaties, acts of Congress, presidential executive orders,
and other federal administrative actions, or federal court decisions
Each federally recognized tribe has its own reservation
and each is eligible for funding and services from the Bureau of Indian Affairs
Recent laws have been enacted in the United States and Canada
which provide Coastal and Plateau Indians a voice in their own dealings
In addition to U.S. citizenship rights, members of recognized tribes possess “special” rights
these are based on treaties and other agreements between their tribe and the United States
these additional rights are to compensate for their collective loss of land and resources
these rights are protected by the United States and Canadian governments

B.C.E.-1499

ROMAN EMPIRE UNITES EUROPE AND THE MIDDLE EAST

City of Rome was founded -- 753 BCE

Roman Empire under various rulers expanded to surround the Mediterranean Sea

it extended across all of continental Europe much of England, parts of the Middle East and North Africa north of the (Sahara Desert)

(BCE: Before the Common Era -- that is before the year 1 CE [Common Era])

because time is sometimes depicted as a line, BCE years become larger as you go back that is, [500 BCE] is 400 years *before* [100 BCE])

EARLY VOYAGES OF DISCOVERY TO THE WESTERN HEMISPHERE

Afro-Phoenicians sailings from Egypt as early as 750 BCE

may have reached (today's Mexico)³⁶

colossal heads of basalt stone that represented realistic portraits of West Africans dating far back in time stand along the eastern coast of (Mexico)

enormous effort was necessary to quarry the basalt blocks weighing ten to forty tons and move them seventy-five miles to sculpt them into heads six to ten feet tall at about the same time, Native Americans created small ceramic and stone sculptures of Caucasoid and Negroid faces

other evidence exists to suggest transatlantic communication including weaving looms and strains of American cotton identical to north African cotton

Mediterranean powers Egypt and Phoenicia sailed as far as Ireland and England -- 600 BCE they may have reached the Atlantic Ocean island of Madeira (one of the Canary Islands) and the islands of the Azores off the coast of West Africa

EARLY EUROPEAN AND AFRICAN VOYAGES TO THE NEW WORLD

There are a great number of historic resources that indicated early cultural exchanges between the "old world" and the "new":

oral histories, written records, cultural similarities, linguistic changes, pottery,

human blood types, archaeological dating and plant migrations

ancient Roman coins have turned up all over the Americas

leading some archaeologists to conclude Roman sailors visited the "New World"

Ancient Arab historical sources provide information

regarding extensive Atlantic Ocean navigation

(thousands of years before Christopher Columbus "discovered" the New World [1492])

³⁶ Locations in parenthesis (Mexico) were not known by that name at the time.

TRADE EXPANDS WITHIN CHINA

Merchants, shippers, camel drivers and sea captains extended and strengthened trade routes across Eurasia along “silk roads,” reaching to the Mediterranean and Black seas and the Indian Ocean between 300 BCE and 300 BCE

Trade within the Chinese empire grew under the Han Dynasty -- 222 BCE-202 BCE

caravans from the interior of China carried commodities to its western boundaries

Central Asian tribes attacked caravans hoping to capture valuable commodities

as a result, the Chinese Han Dynasty extended military defenses further into Central Asia to protect the trade caravans

Prosperous as it was, the “Silk Road” was influenced by local political developments

a stable government assured smooth trade on the road

RISE OF CITIES IN EUROPE AND ASIA

Cities grew size and multiplied in number partly because they developed increasingly strong commercial ties with one another

sometimes across long distances

Two of the biggest cities were Rome and Luoyang, China about 100 BCE

most cities were multifunctional, serving as centers of government, religion, trade, manufacturing, education or artistic centers

cities, such as Rome and Alexandria (Egypt) accomplished all of these functions

other cities had more specialized purposes

towns of the Mediterranean coast and Eurasia

chiefly transshipped goods along routes of trade

CHINESE TRADE EXPANDS INTO EUROPE

Route of the Silk Road grew with the rise of the Roman Empire

Roman leaders linked with the imperial court of China -- 200 CE (Common Era)

trade was conducted by middlemen who belonged to neither of the two empires

only the extreme ends of trade route were managed by Roman and Chinese merchants

Chinese inventions such as gunpowder and paper first travelled to Europe

along the Silk Road as did a growing assortment of other products

Europeans shipped cosmetics, silver, gold, amber, ivory, carpets, perfume and ceramics

gathered in Europe, Central Asia, Arabia and Africa to the Chinese

EAST-WEST TRADE COMES TO AN END

Fall of the Han dynasty caused Chinese trade and the Silk Road to decline -- 220 CE-280 CE

China was thrown into chaos -- reunifying the nation seemed impossible

warring clans, political murders, foreign invaders all kept China in turmoil

(for the next 400 years)

ROMAN EMPIRE IS DIVIDED INTO HALVES

Roman Emperor Diocletian realized the empire was too large of a single ruler
he divided the empire into two parts -- 285 CE (Common Era -- after the year 1 CE)
he kept the wealthier eastern portion for himself
Eastern Roman Empire encompassed extremely wealthy provinces including
most of the Aegean Sea, Asia Minor (Anatolia), Egypt
and portions of North Africa
western portion of the Roman Empire (Europe) was placed under military rule
Civil war broke out in both portions of the Roman Empire -- 306 CE
Eastern Roman Emperor Constantine reunited the old Roman Empire under his control
and became the first Christian Emperor of the empire -- 313 CE
he founded a new capital city, Constantinople (Byzantium) -- 324 CE
and moved from Rome to the eastern city
Constantine planned to give a portion of the Roman Empire to each of his three sons
however, the great Roman emperor died -- 337 CE
Conflict again broke out in the Roman Empire and it was once again divided in two
Western Roman Empire and Eastern Roman Empire

ANCIENT CHINESE TEXTS DESCRIBE A VOYAGE TO THE EAST

Hwui Shan, a Buddhist missionary from Afghanistan, came to China as a young man
about 450 CE
this was a period of great expansion for Buddhism as zealous monks
journeyed to far off regions to share their evangelical fervor
Hwui Shan and four fellow priests chose a much different route than other missionaries
they set sail to the *east* of China and crossed the Yellow Sea
to an island he called “Jesso” (Japan) -- 499 CE
Hwui Shan traveled along the Kurlie islands (between Japan and the Kamchatka Peninsula)
until he reached Kamchatka then cross the North Pacific Ocean to the Aleutian Islands
which he identified as the “**land of the marked bodies**”³⁷
he commented on the three lines painted on men’s faces to designate rank
(this was later confirmed by Alexander Mackenzie [1789])
he was pleased by the friendliness of these people
in the “**Great Han Country**”³⁸ (Alaska) Hwui Shan stopped
to observe the customs of the natives
he went southward past the “Middle Kingdom”
(British Columbia, Washington and Oregon)

³⁷ Edward Paysan Vining, *An Inglorious Columbia*, P. 300.

³⁸ Edward Paysan Vining, *An Inglorious Columbia*, P. 359.

to “Fu-Sang”³⁹ (Baja California) which he described: “[Fu-Sang] was situated twice ten thousand *li* [Chinese distance] or more to the east of the Great Han Country. That land is also situated at the east of the Middle Kingdom. That region has many Fu-Sang trees [mythical mulberry tree of life], and it is from these trees that the country derives its name... Their first sprouts are like those of the bamboo. The people of the country eat them and the fruit, which is [formed] like a pear but of a reddish colour. They spin thread from their bark, from which they make cloth....”⁴⁰

eventually Hwui Shan landed in (today’s Mexico)

where he stayed to learn the culture of its people

Hwui Shan had a habit of describing in minute detail things peculiar to a country or people

when Hui Shen returned to China, he reported his findings to the Emperor

and official historians who included Hwui Shan’s report in their state records

he described finding tool manufacturing people living collectively in tribes and villages

(these are characteristics of what is known as the “Bronze Age” for their use of metal)

Hwui Shan’s story abounds with proofs of accuracy as he cites many American customs

WAS THE DISCOVERY OF HWUI SHAN POSSIBLE?

From China to Mexico it is never more than 200 miles from land point to land point

this distance was easily covered by the most primitive craft of the time

Strong warm Japan Current follows the exact route from China to North America

that was described by Hwui Shan

Japanese Current is so strong that a disabled boat

could not avoid arriving off North America

(modern *Ryo Yei Maru* -- eighty-five-foot, 100-ton fishing schooner

from Miaski, Japan left her home port on a fishing cruise [December 5, 1926]

almost a year later with only two bodies remaining of the crew of twelve

she was sighted off Cape Flattery by freighter *Margaret Dollar*

Ryo Yei Maru was towed to Port Townsend, Washington

ship’s log revealed engine trouble developed a few days after sailing

she was caught in a typhoon and her long drift began)

(Japan suffered a devastating earthquake and tsunami [large ocean wave]

that claimed nearly 16,000 lives, injured about 6,000 people and destroyed

or damaged countless buildings and property [March 11, 2011]

this tsunami also swept about five million tons of debris into the Pacific Ocean

while an estimated seventy percent of the debris sank near Japan’s shore,

the remainder was dispersed throughout the northern Pacific Ocean

some of it made its way to Canadian and U.S. shores -- including Washington

mainly in the form of Styrofoam, plastic, treated wood and light bulbs

³⁹ Edward Paysan Vining, *An Inglorious Columbia*, P. 265

⁴⁰ Edward Paysan Vining, *An Inglorious Columbia*, P. 265-269.

all carried across the Pacific Ocean by the Japanese Current)
Generally, scholars accept Hwui Shan's visit as historic fact
primary debate is now focused on the significance of his visit
in fact, Asians did not arrive regularly and this voyage had little impact on China
while his visit seems of little importance
Hwui Shan may have greatly influenced the natives of the Pacific Coast
changing their lives in innumerable ways

ASIAN INFLUENCES REACH NORTH AMERICAN AND CENTRAL AMERICA

Many travelers and students have noted the similarity of ancient Asians and early Americans regarding social customs, religious rites, arts and languages -- examples of these include:

- almost identical zodiac signs used by Chinese and Native Mexicans;
- buildings in both China and Central American that used roofing materials of concave (bowl-shaped) and convex (curved outward) tiles;
- preservation of human ashes in burial urns;
- some early American inscriptions have many features of a written language which may have been read in columns from top to bottom -- Asian fashion;
- coins, utensils and objects of adornment were found that were Asiatic in origin

IRISH CATHOLIC MONKS WERE RENOWN TRAVELERS

Saint Brendan (Brendan the Voyager, Brendan the Navigator) was part of Ireland's glorious history when the island was first converted to Christianity
like others of his time he set out to convert non-believers to his Roman Catholic faith
he sailed from Ireland in a boat of stitched leather

For seven years Saint Brendan journeyed to find the Promised Land of the saints
sometime between 512-530 CE

fabulous stories of his voyages over perilous waters were popular in the Middle Ages
over the years many interpretations of where he visited surfaced

various pre-Columbian (before Christopher Columbus [1492]) sea-charts

indicated Saint Brendan sailed everywhere from the southern part of Ireland
to the Faroes Island (off Denmark), Portuguese islands of Azores and Madeira
and to the Canary Islands (off West Africa)

(another theory of St. Brendan's travel arose supported by Viking discoveries [1000 CE]
who found a region south of the Chesapeake Bay called "Irland ed mikla"
(Greater Ireland)

and stone carvings discovered in West Virginia dated between 500 and [1000] CE
exhibit grammar and vocabulary in Old Irish using the Ogham alphabet

(Today Saint Brendan is the Patron Saint of sailors and travelers)

CHINA IS REUNITED UNDER THE TANG DYNASTY

Tang Dynasty of China, 618-[907] CE once again revived commerce along the Silk Road
dynasty records indicated the population of the empire to be about fifty million people
its capital city (today's Xi'an) was the time the most populous city in the world
With a large population, the dynasty was able to raise professional and conscripted armies
numbering in the hundreds of thousands

nomadic powers dominating Inner Asia were dealt overthrown
various kingdoms and states paid tribute to the Tang court
lucrative trade routes along the ancient Silk Road could be protected
Tang dynasty established internal stability and initiated economic development in China
policies were carried out to stimulate and encourage trade between east and west
leading to expanding markets and rapid development along the Silk Road
foreigners came and lived in numerous Chinese cities for trade and commerce
Canton (today's Guangzhou) was described as a bustling mercantile center
many impressive foreign ships from Borneo, Indonesia, Java and Persia visited
it was reported to deal in spices, pearls and jade piled as high as mountains
Chinese porcelain was treasured along with ceramics, rice-wine and tea
China's Silk Road covered 7,000 miles and spanned China, Central Asia, Northern India,
the Arabian Peninsula and the Roman Empire
it connected the valley of the Yellow River with the Mediterranean Sea
passing through (the present-day countries of Iran, Iraq and Syria)

Towns and cities sprung up along the Silk Road
these became centers for national crafts, art schools, palaces and mausoleums
traders, missionaries and refugees traveled together bringing new religions, customs,
products like glass, porcelain, soap and gunpowder
and most important, a different culture
these were the people who gather collections of dried plants, studied the stars
and recorded methods of curing diseases
Great Silk Road linked many countries and people by means of peaceful activities
such as trade, culture and spiritual exchanges

THREE EUROPEAN CITIES DEVELOP TRADE WITH THE EAST

Silk Road was a famous trade route that linked China with the early Greeks [400 BCE]
followed by the Roman Empire [100 BCE]
trade along the Silk Road was periodically stopped for varying lengths of time
by political turmoil along the route
Merchants from Pisa and Genoa on the Mediterranean Sea and Venice on the Adriatic Sea
re-opened trade with the East and prospered by selling eastern commodities
carried along the route
goods traveled from the ancient city of Xi'an, China along the Silk Road
across northern China then along several possible routes to Kashgar, China

then along several routes to Mashhad (Iran) to Bagdad (Iraq)
and on to Istanbul (Turkey)
Muslims gladly traded with them at Alexandria, Egypt
or even in Aleppo and Damascus, Syria
but consolidation of the Ottoman Empire [1299] blocked all east-west trade to Europe
there was no direct contact between Europe and Asia for the next century

ISLAMIC INFLUENCE ON EAST-WEST TRADE

Europe's Iberian Peninsula (Spain and Portugal) was conquered by Islamic leaders -- 711
(Muslim forces, known as the Moors, maintained control for more than 700 years
during that time, Muslims diligently preserved the wisdom of the Greeks
and enhanced learning with ideas from China, India and Africa
this information was passed on to Europe through Spain and Portugal)

WESTERN ROMAN EMPIRE BECOMES THE "HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE"

Imperial control of the Western Roman Empire became weaker and weaker
at the same time the Catholic Pope at Rome became increasingly powerful
an ongoing struggle between the rising papacy and the retreating empire led the pope
to unilaterally declare Charlemagne the successor of the Western Emperors -- 800
this gave rise to the "Holy Roman Empire" in Europe
Imperial control of the Eastern Roman Empire, now the Byzantine Empire,
remained independent from the Western Roman Empire for more than 1100 years

ONCE AGAIN THE SILK ROAD DECLINES

Trade along the Silk Road declined with the fall of the Chinese Tang Dynasty -- 907 CE
Chinese did maintain a silk-fur trade with the Russians north of the original Silk Route
overland trade became increasingly dangerous
trade within Europe became more popular

NORTH AMERICA IS DISCOVERED BY EUROPEANS

Leif Erickson (various spellings) was the son of Norwegians Thjodhild and Erik the Red
who founded the first Norse colonies in Greenland where Leif was raised
Leif Erickson sailed to Norway where King Olaf converted him to Christianity around 1000
there are at least two versions of events leading up to Erickson's great discovery:
•on his way back to Greenland, Erickson was blown off course
he landed on the North American continent which he named "Vinland;"
•he may have sought out Vinland based on stories of an earlier voyage
by an Icelandic trader
Leif Erickson and his crew of thirty-five men spent the winter in Vinland
they built a small settlement

(later called Leifsbudir [Leif's Booths] by visitors from Greenland)
Leif returned to Greenland in the spring with a cargo of grapes and timber
(Norwegian research done in the [early 1960s] identified a Norse settlement
located at the northern tip (of today's Newfoundland)
later archaeological evidence suggests that Vinland may have been the area
around (today's Gulf of St. Lawrence) while Leifsbudir was a boat repair center
this indicates the settlement of Vinland may have occupied multiple locations
two other sites in Vinland are also mentioned in sagas
written in the [1500s and 1600s]
Straumfjord in the north and Hop in the south)

THE CRUSADES WERE BATTLES TO DRIVE MOSLEMS FROM THE HOLY LAND

The Holy Land referred to part of the Middle East that is sacred to three major religions:

- for Jews it is the ancient Land of Israel (today's Palestine)
holy because it is where Moses led the Israelites to the promised land;
- this region between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea is holy for Christians
because it is the place where Jesus Christ lived and taught;
- for Muslims (the followers of Muhammad) it is holy because it was conquered
by the Arabs and became the center of an empire that expanded
across the Middle East from India on the east and across North Africa
to the south and to Spain and Portugal on the west and north

many sites in the Holy Land have long been pilgrimage destinations for all three religions
Jerusalem is the holiest of cities for all three religions

Western Europe was dominated by the Roman Catholic Church
Catholic religion was transportable and proselytizing (converting others)
spreading Christianity became a reason for military conquests
because of the power and influence maintained by the Roman Catholic pope
criticism of the church was impossible (before the time of Christopher Columbus)

Crusades were led by the Roman Catholic Church to remove Muslims from the Holy Land
military units of Roman Catholics from all over western Europe
marched to the Holy Land
roads, unused since the days of Rome, were need to raise, transport and supply armies
significant increases in traffic took place as local merchants
increased their areas of operation

nine Crusades were led by the church between 1096 CE and [1272 CE]
(In a series of battles the Portuguese drove the Moors (Muslims) out of the country [1250]
Portugal became an independent nation)

FUEDALISM OF THE MIDDLE AGES RESTRICTS THE LIVES OF EUROPEANS

There were many motivations for people to remain exactly where they were located

family and friends, security and protection, knowledge of surroundings
and fear of the unknown dominated the instinct of curiosity and the spirit of adventure
Yet a few adventurers in opposition to common practice did set out to see the world
an individual, perhaps joined by a companion, might strike out along a main road or path
it was possible to live off the land if the traveler was cautious and adaptable
it was important for a stranger to appear nonthreatening and to show a friendly face
merchants or missionaries could practice their trade along the way to generate an income
but to be accepted by the locals they must be willing to learn and accept new ideas
and be tolerant of new ways of doing things
if necessary, the journey could be extended as long as necessary -- even for a decades
perils of travel varied by landscape, weather conditions and encounters with strangers
these made the journey challenging and suspenseful but rewarding

MAPS ADD TO THE FEAR OF THE UNKNOWN

Rather than providing a depiction of the shape of the land in a specific location or area
early European maps were the depictions of the unknown by an artist
tiny known areas were approximately portrayed
these were surrounded by vast areas of terra incognita (land unknown)
immense unknown areas were fancifully filled in by Christian artists
to locate Biblical places
Jerusalem, the center of the earth, was placed in the center of the map
heaven, an ocean that surrounded the earth (much like air),
was located at the top of the map
terrifying demons, blood-thirsty animals, voracious plants and frightful people
denominated the unknown regions -- instilling terror and stifling wanderlust
Garden of Eden moved from location to location as maps progressively expanded

GENGHIS KHAN (RULER) UNITES THE MONGOL EMPIRE

Mongol Empire emerged from the unification of Mongol and Turkic tribes of Mongolia
under the leadership of Genghis Khan who united many of the nomadic tribes
of northeast Asia by the use of wholesale slaughter of the local inhabitants -- 1206
(Genghis Khan and his empire have a fearsome reputation
in local histories to this day)
significant among these people were the Tatars
native people of Volga River region of Russia
fierce horse riders, skilled archers and well-schooled in the art of war
they were a fearsome enemy
Genghis Khan's leadership, charisma, innovations in law and organization
gave him the tools necessary to expand his empire exponentially
Under Genghis Khan the Mongol Empire encompassed Central Asia and Cathay (China)

east to the borders of the Korean Peninsula and west to parts of the Middle East
to the south the heartlands of India were drawn into the empire
by the time of his death --1227

Death of Genghis Khan left his empire divided into four “khanates”

his descendants went on to capture the largest contiguous land empire in human history
stretching from Eastern Europe to the Sea of Japan,
covering large parts of Siberia in the north
south into Southeast Asia, the Indian subcontinent, the Iranian plateau
and the Middle East

Genghis Khan and his descendents Batu Khan, Mangu Khan, Kublai Khan and Hulagu
showed a combination of military genius, personal courage administrative versatility
and cultural tolerance unequalled in Europe

they conquered or created vassal states out of (modern-day China, Korea, Vietnam, Iraq,
Syria, Turkey, Afghanistan, Pakistan, Palestine, Ukraine, Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan,
Turkmenistan, Belarus, Azerbaijan, Georgia, Armenia, Poland, Estonia,
Latvia, Lithuania, Hungary, Bulgaria, Thailand, Myanmar, Japan, Java, Austria,
Croatia, Egypt, Israel, Jordan, Lebanon, Saudi Arabia, Serbia, Kuwait, Montenegro,
Bosnia and Herzegovina, Albania, Greece and Macedonia)

swarms of Tatar horsemen ravaged Poland and Hungary --1241

spreading fear throughout the Christian Europe as Mongol warriors were poised
to swarm across Europe the great Khan Okkodai died forcing their return home

EMPIRE OF KUBLAI KHAN, THE GRANDSON OF GENGHIS KHAN RULES BY LAW

Mongol Empire was separated into four Khanates, each ruled by a separate Khan

Kublai Khan came to power through strength of arms but his reign also featured
advancements in political organization as well as the arts and sciences
he organized his bureaucracy based on the traditional Mongol system,
but also adopted many aspects of Chinese administrative practices

Kublai Khan employed large numbers of Chinese officials and advisors
after all he had tens of thousands of Mongols with him
and they had to rule millions of Chinese

Kublai continued to expand the Mongol Empire but in contrast to Genghis Khan and others
he stressed to his generals the importance and effectiveness of clemency
toward the conquered

Kublai Khan was elected Khan of Mongolia and Cathay (China) at age forty-five --1260
when the Great Khan came to the Mongol throne his empire reached
from the Yellow River in China to the shores of the Danube in eastern Europe
and from Siberia to the Persian Gulf

eleven years later he created the Yuan Dynasty of Cathay uniting the four empires
his reign was one of solid expansion and lasting achievements

his people enjoyed economic prosperity and advanced the fields of science and literature astronomy, mathematics and medicine reached a very high level
Chinese economy was mainly based on agriculture that developed superior techniques
paper currency backed by gold that was good throughout China
stimulated the development of commerce
trade with foreign countries was greatly encouraged
New artistic styles flourished as Kublai Khan sponsored a melding
of Chinese and Tibetan Buddhism
he patronized astronomers and clock-makers
he hired a monk to create a written language
for some of Western China's non-literate languages

DESPITE THE FEARS OF CHRISTIANS, THE MONGOLS BECAME POWERFUL ALLIES

Muslims Turks had blocked all trade along the ancient Silk Road
Mongol warriors successfully invaded and occupied the shores of the Caspian Sea
and overcame the Ottoman Caliph of Baghdad and Syria
Mongol empires extended twice the size of the Roman Empire
the route to East-West trade was suddenly re-opened to European travelers
Tartars, Mongol people from Central Asia were much maligned by European historians
as reckless destroyers and barbarians
these historians never saw a Tartar and knew nothing of their culture and progress⁴¹
Mongol leaders believed in free trade among nations
they provided the usual Mongol policy of low customs charges, lower tolls and taxes,
well-policed roads to protect against bandits and free passage for everyone
great Silk Road that had been heavily traveled for centuries was open to Europeans
Tatar conquest of Russia opened a northern road to Cathay

MARCO POLO TRAVELS TO THE INDIES

Marco Polo's father Noicolo and uncle Maffeo were Venice (Italy) merchants
who were involved in the Asian trade and had visited the court of Kublai Khan
Marco Polo was seventeen years old when he left Venice with his father and uncle
bypassing Constantinople on an overland trading trip to Cathay (China)
reaching the Silk Road, they crossed high mountains and deserts
they fought fierce nomads who plundered caravans of trade goods
Marco Polo and his relatives reached the Court of Kublai Khan in Cathay (China) -- 1271
In court Marco saw that the Great Khan's ambassadors were unable to provide information
regarding anything beyond the specific business, they had been sent to conduct
Marco was sent on a mission of his own to represent the Great Khan
Marco took pains to learn about all kinds of different matters in countries he visited

⁴¹ Daniel Boorstin, *The Discoverers*, P. 126

to report back the details lacking in other reports but important to Kublai Khan
he was awed by the ruthlessness and hardness of the Mongol soldiers
Kublai Khan was quite impressed by young Marco Polo
every year he became more reluctant to lose Marco's services
Marco remained in the employ of Khan for seventeen years
traveling on missions to far off places
Marco Polo had knowledge of or had actually visited a greater number
of different countries than any other man in the world
(After an absence of twenty-four years all three Polos returned to Venice [winter 1295]
they brought hidden in their clothes a shower of rubies, diamonds and emeralds)

DEATH OF KUBLAI KHAN LEADS TO AN END TO EAST-WEST TRADE

During the glorious period of trade diplomatic activities with foreign countries were frequent
many foreign envoys, merchants and travelers such as Italian merchant Marco Polo
traveled to Cathay
However, following the death of Kublai Khan --1294
East-West trade stopped -- all roads to the East were closed [1350]

MEDITERRANEAN SEA WAS THE CENTER OF EUROPEAN TRADE

Trade within Europe was conducted by Venice, Naples, Genoa and Pisa ships
which sailed north to bring products from Northern Europe
back to the Mediterranean trade centers
Venice early became important in the Mediterranean trade
aided by the stability of her government the city became the most prosperous
Florence became outstanding in banking and woolen manufacture
Naples, Milan and Venice ranked among the five most populous cities in Western Europe

GENOA AND VENICE BATTLE FOR CONTROL OF THE MEDITERRANEAN TRADE

Bitter rivalry between the two centers of trade erupted in fighting
a climatic sea battle off the Dalmatian coast left Genoa the victor -- September 6, 1298
one of the seven thousand Venetian prisoners was ship commander Marco Polo
who was brought back in chains to Genoa

MERCHANTS IN EUROPE CONDUCT TRADE WITH CHINA

City merchants of Genoa and Pisa on the Mediterranean Sea and Venice on the Adriatic Sea
prospered by selling exotic Eastern commodities
goods traveled over the Silk Road from eastern China through central Asia
passed through Baghdad (Iraq) on the way to Istanbul (Turkey)
Muslims in Alexandria (Egypt), Aleppo and Damascus (Syria)
gladly traded with the merchants of Genoa, Pisa and Venice

but Muslim Turks did not allow European goods to pass through Istanbul to the East
However, Egyptian routes in the hands of Turkish Muslims
were very difficult for Europeans to use
goods passing by that route were so heavily taxed by the local sultans
that Indian merchandise tripled in cost by the time it reached a merchant
in Pisa, Genoa and Venice⁴²
Turkish tribes conquered Constantinople (Istanbul), Turkey -- 1299
this was the beginning the Ottoman Empire
one of the most powerful empires in the world
Ottoman Turks established a multinational, multilingual empire
controlling much of southeast Europe, Western Asia and North Africa
all trade between Europe and Asia was ended

MARCO POLO DICTATES THE STORY OF HIS VAST TRAVELS

Marco became friendly with another prisoner, Rustichello, who authored tales of romance
such as his retelling of the tales of King Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table
Marco dictated his reminiscences of his travels throughout Cathay (China)
to another prisoner -- 1300
Rustichello knew the makings of a good story and could not restrain himself
from occasionally embellishing Marco's exploits with episodes of his own creation
Rustichello published the *Travels of Marco Polo* not in Latin -- the language of the clergy
but rather in French -- the language of literate
before long Marco Polo's was translated into most European languages
**"never before or since has a single book brought so much authentic new
information, or so widened the vista for a continent."**⁴³

Marco Polo was nicknamed "Marco Million" because of his supposed exaggerations
Polo reported "Ania" was an Asiatic province located in the interior of Cathay
he noted a water link connected Europe with Ania -- the "Strait of Anian"

SPAIN BECOMES INTERESTED IN TRADE WITH THE EAST

Marco Polo had stirred the imagination of adventures in Europe
he began a search for a water passage to the East which lasted for 500 years
(until Roald Amundsen sailed the *Gjoa* from the Atlantic to the Pacific [1907])
Islamic rulers of Spain were interested in recording and expanding knowledge of the world
Spanish geographers worked out new maps
which confirmed details in Marco Polo's book -- 1375
these writing stirred the imagination of adventurers
and sparked the search for great wealth

⁴² Daniel Boorstin, *The Discoverers*, P. 128

⁴³ Daniel Boorstin, *The Discoverers*, P. 128

FUNDIMENTAL CHANGES TAKE PLACE IN EUROPE

People in Europe did not consider themselves part of a nation
they rarely left their village and knew little of the larger world
most were responsible to the local feudal nobles who provided only limited protection
A few monarchs began to consolidate their power
by allying themselves with the emerging commercial classes
they weaken the control local feudal nobles exerted over their subjects
Consolidation of wealth and power into the hands of a few led to the rise of city-states
whose increasing prosperity and power from international trade and commerce
led to an increase in the size of territory to be conquered
new forms of social technology developed that provided for successful administration
bureaucracy grew in size and authority, double-entry bookkeeping,
and mechanical printing all allowed merchants and rulers
to manage far-flung empires
since the invention of gunpowder by the Chinese [1232] military technology advanced
as European rulers began to commission improved guns and larger cannons
an ability to mount cannons on ships developed
arms races also extended to refinements in archery and siege tactics
amassing wealth and dominating other people became positively valued attributes
they provided the key means of winning esteem on earth -- and salvation in heaven
Europe had enjoyed success in exploiting various newly-discovered islands and societies
gradually spreading more deadly forms of smallpox and bubonic plague across Europe
and devastatingly carrying diseases to places where immunity did not exist

EUROPEAN TRADE MERCHANTS HAVE FIRM CONTROL OF EAST-WEST TRADE

City-states of the Italian Peninsula were the beginning and end of the trade routes to the East
trade goods were very expensive to purchase and to transport
Italian and Constantinople trade merchants justified their high prices
by pointing out the dangers involved in conducting trade:
•traders had to carry goods half way around the world;
•caravans had to crawl through high mountain passes infested with bandits;
•local lords taxed the travelers and their cargo;
•bridges and ferries charged tolls;
•goods passed through the hands of many middlemen -- each earned a profit
Clearly, a new preferably all water route, was needed
to transport increased amounts of trade goods

PORTUGUESE LEADERS BEGIN TO SEEK A NEW TRADE ROUTE TO THE EAST

Prince Henry (The Navigator) was the third son of Portuguese King John

like his brothers Henry desired fame and glory
to fulfill that end he oversaw construction of a fleet of ships to be used in a crusade
against the infidels (non-Christians) then occupying Gibraltar, Portugal
while his fleet was en route to establish a glorious reputation for Henry
his father, King John, rejected his plan
Prince Henry returned home to sulk -- but rather return and brood in the court in Lisbon
he went to the very tip of southern Portugal
there he created a new path to fame and glory
twenty-six-year-old Prince Henry established headquarters at Sagres, Portugal
and remained for forty years until his death [1460]
Portugal's location faced away from the centers of European civilization
rather it looked westward toward the vast unknown ocean
and southward toward the African continent
of which Europeans were equally ignorant
Prince Henry sought to explore into the unknown around Africa
hopefully, as rumors persisted, India could be reached by this route
however, the idea was pure speculation based on rumors, vague ideas and suggestions
unknown lands must be skirted and used to supply food and water along the route
Christian geographers depicted scenes of mortal danger in *terra incognita* (land unknown)
what would be required was an original, progressive, systematic national program

PRINCE HENRY OF PORTUGAL BECOMES HENRY THE NAVIGATOR

Henry knew the only way to explore the unknown
was to clearly mark its receding boundaries
he made Sagres a center for cartography, navigation and shipbuilding
he initiated and organized expeditions on the edge of the unknown world
although he never ventured out himself
Henry organized something like a school for mariners at Sagres, Portugal
Henry gathered together old and new books, charts and maps
sea captains, pilots, mariners and travelers from all over Europe arrived
bringing new information, observations and facts
scholars and geographers, aware of ancient discoveries, arrived to record
old and new information
map-makers, compass-makers and other instrument-makers arrived to advance navigation
mariners' compasses were well known at this time
skilled craftsmen developed a simpler cross-staff to measure latitude,
to measure the angle of the stars for the same purpose the quadrant was invented,
mathematical tables were developed to accurately determine latitude anywhere
shipbuilders, carpenters and other craftsmen improved ship construction
that resulted in an advanced sailing ship

sail-makers revived old concepts and developed new skills and techniques
that revolutionized the skill of sailing
tradesmen arrived to plan and prepare expeditions searching farther into the unknown
Henry the Navigator at first encouraged, and then required, the leaders of his expeditions
to keep accurate logbooks and charts to be brought back to Sagres
so cartographers could accurately record the information that had been generated
Portugal's standard ship, the familiar square-rigged *BarcaI*,
was suited to sailing with the wind
these large ships worked well in the confines of the Mediterranean Sea
where larger cargoes assured greater profit -- maneuverability was not important
however, ships designed for discovery did not need to be large
its important cargo was information which could be carried on a map or in a logbook
or journal or even in a man's mind
discovery ships had to be maneuverable and they had to be able to sail back home
Henry's craftsmen developed the Portuguese "caravel"
small highly maneuverable sailing ships
they were agile and easy to navigate with a shallow keel (bottom)
caravels could sail upriver and in shallow coastal waters
they displaced about fifty tons and were seventy feet long with a twenty-five-foot beam
they were large enough to hold supplies for a small crew of about twenty
who usually slept on the deck but in bad weather went below
mariners who sailed out with the wind had to return against the wind
square-rigged sails were pushed by the wind
and pulled into the vacuum generated as the wind blew across the curved sails
ancient Roman ships had used lateen-rigged sails
rather than running across the ship like square-rigged sails
lateen-rigged sails ran the length of the ship and were triangular shaped
lateen-rigged sails could be turned into the wind
caravels carried two or three lateen sails and were ideal for exploration
limited capacity for cargo and crew were their main drawbacks
Caravels became the explorers' standard ship
Port of Lagos, Portugal near Sagres became a shipbuilding center
Year after year Prince Henry sent out expeditions to explore
using its newly-developed caravels, Portugal discovered the Madeira Islands
and the Azores located west and south of Portugal
these were claimed by Portugal by "right of discovery"
leap-frogging exploration of the West coast of Africa was begun using caravels
African pilots helped Prince Henry's captains explore their way down the coast
African slave trade was first begun when Portuguese explorers
sold two hundred captives in Lagos (Nigeria) -- 1444

slave trade profits changed the public's attitude toward Prince Henry the Navigator
up until then he had cost the kingdom a considerable amount of money
with very little return on the investment
however, profits from the slave trade turned public criticism into praise
Portuguese sailors heard that African traders were sailing across the Atlantic Ocean -- 1450
but the primary goal for Prince Henry the Navigator's explorers was India

CONSTANTINOPLE FALLS TO THE TURKS

Constantine was the capital city of the Eastern Roman or Byzantine Empire
that had been founded by the Roman Emperor Constantine the Great [330 CE]
this was the home of the Eastern Orthodox Catholic Church
as opposed to the Roman Catholic Church founded in Rome (Italy)
Constantinople fell to European soldiers during the Fourth Crusade [1204]
and was captured by Muslims led by Sultan Mehmen II's Ottoman Turks -- 1453
Byzantine Empire was replaced by the Ottoman Empire
(Ottoman Empire reached its peak covering parts of Asia, Europe and Africa [1590]
and reigned until the end of World War I [1917] when the empire was broken up)

SPAIN OVERTHROWS THE ISLAMIC GOVERNMENT

Muslims ruled large parts of the Iberian Peninsula (Spain and Portugal) more than 700 years
Seventeen-year-old King Ferdinand II of Aragon
married eighteen-year-old Isabella of Castile
they began their cooperative reign uniting two important regions of Spain -- 1469
They were propelled by their Roman Catholic faith to pursue an expensive, bloody,
ten-year war to drive out the Moors (Muslims)
and unite their land under Christian leadership
Ferdinand and Isabella incorporated a number of independent Spanish realms
into their kingdom

JOHN II BECOMES KING OF PORTUGAL

Portuguese expeditions organized by Prince Henry the Navigator,
the younger brother of John II,
had crawled down the West African coast in search of riches -- notably gold
while this had greatly extended Portuguese maritime knowledge,
there was little profit to show for the effort
Upon becoming king of Portugal, John II needed to build up the royal treasury -- 1481
he saw expanding commerce as the key
he was eager to break into the highly profitable Italian spice trade
between Europe and Asia
King John II wanted to find a new all-water trade route to Asia

by sailing around the African continent

PORTUGAL LAUNCHES THE “AGE OF DISCOVERY”

Portuguese King John II sent Captain Bartholomew Dias to explore the coast of West Africa in search of a way to reach the Indian Ocean

previously only possible by traveling overland

Dias sailed from Lisbon, Portugal with three ships -- August 1487

leaving his supply ship behind, he sailed two ships off the coast of South Africa

Dias reached the southern tip of Africa which was named the “Cape of Good Hope”

he continued east as far as the Eastern Cape province of South Africa

before turning back

(After fifteen months at sea and a journey of 16,000 miles the returning triumphant mariners were met by welcoming crowds in Lisbon, Portugal [December 1488]

one was Christopher Columbus who had been trying to convince King John II of his idea to reach the East by sailing West

Dias’ good news was bad news for Columbus)

SPAIN BEGINS THE INQUISITION TO DRIVE OUT SPANISH JEWS

Catholic Pope Sixtus IV allowed Ferdinand and Isabella to introduce the Spanish Inquisition a powerful and brutal force to confront what was seen as a danger to the church

from Jews masquerading as Christians

All Jews who refused to leave Spain or to convert to Christianity would be driven from Spain or would face torture and death by the Spanish Inquisition --1488

SPAIN EXPANDS ITS INQUISITION

Ferdinand and Isabella drove the last of the Moors (Muslims) from Granada, Spain -- 1492

Spanish Muslims were given a similar order as had been given the Spanish Jews

leave Spain, convert to Christianity or face the Inquisition

Spain went from being one of the most tolerant countries in Europe

to one of the most intolerant

Catholic Inquisition tortured and killed Jew and Muslims alike in Spain, Portugal,

(and expanded to the Spanish Netherlands and Latin America

until it is suppressed in Portugal [1820] and [1834] in Spain)

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS PREPARES AN EXPEDITION OF DISCOVERY FOR SPAIN

Italian navigator Christopher Columbus traveled extensively through Europe

he may have learned of the Viking’s discoveries in the “New World”

he claimed to have visited Iceland [1477]

Failing to gain support for his plan to reach China by sailing West across the Atlantic Ocean from either Italy (already conducting trade with Cathay [China])

or Portugal (which was then searching for a route to China of its own around Africa)
Italian navigator Christopher Columbus presented his plan to Spain's Queen Isabella
she referred the idea to a committee for their consideration
Spanish advisors determined that Columbus grossly underestimated the distance to Asia
they advised their Royal Highnesses to reject the impractical plan
however, to keep Columbus from taking his ideas elsewhere, the explorer was given
an annual allowance and was provided a letter ordering all cities and towns
under Ferdinand and Isabella to provide him food and lodging at no cost
After lobbying the Spanish Royal court for two years Queen Isabella remained opposed
Columbus left the court in despair -- however, King Ferdinand intervened
Columbus' voyage of discovery was saved
About half of the funding for the expedition came from private investors
Spain was financially bankrupt after fighting the Moors (Muslims) for ten years
royal treasurer was forced to shift funds to pay for the expedition
Christopher Columbus was made "Admiral of the Ocean"
and was to receive a part of all profits

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS EXPLORES FOR SPAIN

Forty-one-year-old Columbus departed on his first trip from Palos, Spain
in search of India (China, Cipangu [Japan] and the islands of the East Indies)
he led three caravels: the flag ship *Santa Maria* accompanied by the *Nina*
and the *Pinta* -- August 3, 1492
As instructed by Spanish monarchs Ferdinand and Isabella,
this was no mere trade or even exploration trip,
but was rather a conquest and exploitation effort
converting any newly discovered natives to Christianity was used as the rationale
Columbus stopped in the Canary Islands off the coast of West Africa for repairs
before continuing to sail West -- September 6
his journal noted they enjoyed lovely sailing
seas were so calm the sailors were able to converse from ship to ship
they experienced high seas only on the last day when they knew land was near
Columbus reached the New World when he discovered and named San Salvador
(a small island in today's Bahamas) -- October 12, 1492
he was certain this was on an outlying island of Cipango (Japan)
Arawak natives of the island soon appeared and brought gifts for Columbus and his crew
some of the ornaments worn by the natives were made of gold
using sign language, these people told Columbus there were many more islands
to the north and south where they found gold
Columbus explored five nearby islands
since Columbus thought he was in the East Indies, he misnamed the people "Indians"

Columbus sailed on to the island of Cuba where he arrived -- October 28
thinking he had found China, he sent two men to investigate
but they failed to find the emperor
Leaving Cuba, Columbus made another landfall -- December 5
natives called the island Haiti, but Columbus renamed it La Espanola
(today's Hispaniola island contains the nations of Haiti and the Dominican Republic)
Santa Maria ran aground and had to be abandoned -- December 25, 1492
Columbus himself took over as captain of the *Nina*
Columbus arranged to leave thirty-nine of his men behind on La Espanola (Hispaniola)
in a small settlement he named La Navidad (in today's Haiti)
which means Christmas in Spanish
Christopher Columbus began his return voyage to Spain -- January 16, 1493
Columbus kidnapped between ten to twenty-five Indians to be taken to Spain
this is the first slave trading exploitation between the Old and New Worlds
Columbus reached Palos, Spain -- March 15, 1493
to prove his success, he displayed the seven or eight natives who survived the trip
he revealed to his crew that he kept two ship's logs in an effort to keep secret
his route to the East Indies (which he never reached)
as his reward from Spanish King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella
Columbus was promoted to "Admiral of the Ocean Sea"
Columbus had launched the "Age of Discovery"
When Columbus reached the Western Hemisphere
perhaps twenty million or more people lived there
nations such as the Arawaks of the newly discovered West Indies stunned Europeans
they had no monarchs or hierarchy
Fascination with America led to European self-consciousness and religious confusion
some Europeans glorified Indian nations as examples of simpler, better societies
from which European civilization had devolved
others maligned Indian societies as primitive and underdeveloped

CATHOLIC CHURCH WAS COFOUNDED BY INFORMATION COLUMBUS BROUGHT

Christopher Columbus had, in fact, discovered a whole New World
it was noted in the Bible that all animals lived in the Garden of Eden
later two of each species entered Noah's arc
where did all of these animals not mentioned in the Bible come from?
even more confusing, who were these new people not mentioned in the Bible?
unlike Muslims they had not rejected Christianity -- they had never encountered it
Also, there was the issue of two Catholic nations, Portugal and Spain,
competing over the New World
Spanish rulers Ferdinand and Isabella feared claims and expansion by Portugal

would limit Spain's access to Columbus' discovery
and strengthen Portugal's economy
they insisted the pope grant them exclusive claim
to all lands South and West toward India
Pope Alexander VI issued the *Inter caetera* papal bull (charter)
dividing the western hemisphere into Portuguese and Spanish zones
"Line of Demarcation" was drawn 100 Leagues West of Portugal's Cape Verde islands
off the West coast of Africa -- May 4, 1493
this recognized Portuguese claims to the land east of the line including Africa
Spain was entitled to all lands West of the Line of Demarcation
almost entirely all of the New World fell under Spanish influence
thus France, the Netherlands and England were left without a sea route to Asia
unless their ships defied the papal ban and explored anyway

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS' SECOND VOYAGE TO THE NEW WORLD

Spain immediately appreciated the value Columbus' discoveries
Ferdinand and Isabella outfitted him for a second expedition to explore and colonize
with seventeen caravels, 1,200-1,500 men, pigs, horses, cattle, attack dogs
cannons, crossbows, guns, cavalry and their diseases
Columbus' orders were to expand the Hispaniola settlement,
convert the natives to Christianity, establish a trading post
and continue his explorations in search of China or Japan
Columbus sailed from the Canary Island -- October 13, 1493
his journey led to the discovery of the island of Dominica, the Leeward Islands,
Lesser Antilles chain and Puerto Rico south of Cuba
giving Spain the claim of discovery over each
islands discovered by Columbus became known as the West Indies
When Christopher Columbus returned to his colony of La Navidad
on the island of Hispaniola
he discovered all of his men had been killed by angry natives
Columbus attacked a local tribe and took many of the people as slaves
Columbus had been appointed governor and Viceroy of the new lands by the Spanish crown
his second voyage marked the start of the colonization of the New World
over the next year and a half did his best to establish a government but failed
he kept most of what little wealth was found for himself -- supplies began to run out

COLUMBUS RETURNS TO SPAIN WITH LITTLE TO SHOW FOR HIS EFFORTS

Columbus returned to Spain to ask for more resources to keep his struggling colony alive
Columbus had promised gold and trade routes
he did not want to return to Spain empty-handed

instead, on his second expedition he brought back many native slaves with him
Appalled, Queen Isabella decreed New World natives were subjects of the Spanish crown
therefore they could not be enslaved
most were freed and ordered returned to the New World

TREATY OF TORDESILLAS IS SIGNED BY SPAIN AND PORTUGAL

Pope Alexander VI's *Inter caetera* papal bull (Line of Demarcation)
had divided an unknown New World between two Catholic nations -- 1493
Portuguese King John II was not pleased with that arrangement
he felt his sailors were forced to sail too close to the coast of Western Africa
African traders visiting (today's Brazil) may have influenced King John II
to insist on moving pope's Line of Demarcation to the west
Spanish and Portuguese ambassadors met at Tordesillas in northwest Spain t
to resolve the dispute
they accepted the principle of dividing the New World
as established by Pope Alexander VI
they agreed to move the old line 100 leagues
west of the Cape Verde islands -- June 7, 1494
(this new line has a profound significance -- it sliced South America into two parts
the Eastern part came under Portuguese control
and the Western portion fell to the Spanish)
Treaty of Tordesillas effectively countered Pope Alexander VI's *Inter caetera* papal bull
even though the new treaty was negotiated without consulting the Pope,
some sources called the resulting line the Papal Line of Demarcation

ENGLAND REACHES THE NEW WORLD

John Cabot, an Italian navigator and explorer, was financed by Italian merchants in London
and commissioned by England's King Henry VII to sail on a voyage of discovery
he believed that the route to Asia would be shorter from northern Europe
than Columbus' route
On Cabot's first effort he sailed the *Matthew*, a fast and able ship of fifty tons
(tonnage was a measure of volume and not weight)
with a crew of eighteen men from Bristol, England -- summer 1496
fifty days into the voyage, Cabot landed on the east coast of North America
although the precise location of this landing is subject to controversy
he is thought to have given "Newfoundland, "an island in Canada, its name
wherever Cabot landed, his expedition became the first Europeans
to set foot in North American since the Vikings 500 years earlier
Cabot only reported landing once during his expedition
and he did not advance inland any distance

he made no contact with any native people
but did find the remains of a fire, a human trail, nets and a wooden tool
Cabot's crew appeared to have remained on land only long enough to take on fresh water
and to raise the Venetian and Papal banners
and claim the land for the King of England

PORTUGAL FINDS AN ALL-WATER TRADE ROUTE TO INDIA

Portuguese explorer Vasco da Gama under a commission from King John II
sailed a fleet of four ships with a crew of 170 men from Lisbon, Portugal -- July 8, 1497
da Gama commanded the *Sao Gabriel* accompanied by its sister ship the *Sao Rafael*,
the slightly smaller caravel *Berrio* and an unnamed storage ship
da Gama followed the route pioneered by earlier Portuguese explorers
along the coast of Africa

Rounding the Cape of Good Hope, he sailed up the east coast of Africa
to Malindi (just north of Mambasa in today's Kenya, Africa)
there he contracted the services of a pilot whose knowledge of the monsoon winds
allowed him to bring the expedition east to Calicut
located on the southwest coast of India

Vasco da Gama's expedition was successful beyond all reasonable expectation
he carried back two ship loads of spices to Lisbon, Portugal [August 1499]
these were sold at an enormous profit to the crown
for sixty times the cost of the expedition
still, the expedition had exacted a large cost
one ship and over half his men had been lost

JOHN CABOT'S SECOND ENGLISH EXPEDITION ENDS IN MYSTERY

John Cabot's second expedition to Newfoundland was far less successful than his first voyage
Cabot departed from Bristol, England with five ships and a crew of 300 men -- May 1498
his ships carried ample provisions and small samplings of cloth, lace and "trifles"
which suggested he was to begin trade with the native people
en route, one ship became disabled and sailed to Ireland as the other four ships continued
from this point there is only speculation as to the fate of the voyage and John Cabot

COLUMBUS' THIRD VOYAGE ENDS IN HIS ARREST

Christopher Columbus' third expedition to the New World
sailed from Spain -- May 30, 1498
this was an expedition composed of six vessels
to bring supplies to his colony of La Navidad on the island of Hispaniola
and to further explore to the south
Columbus founded his second colony, Santo Domingo (in today's Haiti)

this became the oldest European city in the Americas

Columbus left his brother Don Bartolome to act as governor of the New World governmental control eventually broke down and was replaced

Spanish soldiers were granted a tract of land or an entire village with its inhabitants
this system was not called slavery -- so there was no reaction to it in Europe
Failure of Columbus and his two brothers as political leaders of the New World colony
along with the failure to produce gold and silver for Spain's Royal Majesties
resulted in all three being clapped in irons
and sent back to Spain as prisoners [October 1500]

AMERIGO VESPUCCI OBSERVES THE EAST COAST OF SOUTH AMERICA

Amerigo Vespucci was a merchant in Venice, Italy

at the invitation of King Manuel of Portugal, Vespucci participated as observer
in several voyages that explored the east coast of South America
between 1499 and [1502]

striking the northeast coast at what is now (today's Guyana)

Vespucci sailed southward, discovering the mouth of the (Amazon River)

Portuguese sailors reached 6° South before returning north

Vespucci sighted (today's Trinidad) and the (Orinoco River)

he stopped at the Spanish colony of Santo Domingo before returning to Portugal

SPANISH COLONISTS DISCOVER GOLD ON THE ISLAND OF HISPANIOLA

Spanish governors of the colony of Santo Domingo made a major gold strike -- 1499
hundreds of natives were forced to mine for gold

punishment was used to make an example

even for minor offenses Spanish soldiers cut off the ears or noses of the natives

All Indians were forced to promise to give a tribute to the Catholic Sovereigns in Spain
every three months each person age fourteen and older paid a specified amount

when the tribute was paid, the native received a brass or copper token to wear

if no token could be displayed, hands were cut off -- Indians died of starvation

Forcing Indians to work in mines caused disrupted the native culture and the ecosystem
an enormous decrease in the native population took place

malnutrition became widespread as gardens and fields were ignored

rabbits and livestock brought in by the Spanish caused further devastation

European diseases carried by the sailors and animals became wide-spread

1500-1599

PEDRO ALVARES CABRAL SAILS FOR INDIA TO CONDUCT TRADE FOR PORTUGAL

King Manuel of Portugal sent Pedro Alvares Cabral on an expedition to India
Cabral's thirteen ships left Lisbon, Portugal -- March 9, 1500
Cabral sailed far west of Vasco da Gama's newly opened route around Africa
probably at the instigation of African pilots
guiding his ships along Africa's west coast
Cabral sighted the east coast of South America (at today's Brazil)⁴⁴
this was within the area designated to Portugal under the Treaty of Tordesillas
he claimed the region for Portugal and named it "Island of the True Cross"
(King Manuel renamed it Holy Cross
it was renamed Brazil after a dyewood found there)
Cabral stayed in (Brazil) for ten days then continued on his way around Africa to India
In a trip fraught with storms, shipwrecks (at the Cape of Good Hope) and fighting
(fifty of Cabral's men were killed after an attack from Muslim traders in India
who did not want competition for their spice routes)
however, Cabral successfully traded for spices in Calicut, India
Cabral returned to Portugal with only four of the original thirteen ships -- June 23, 1501
but he delivered the news of his new discoveries in the New World

PEDRO ALVARES CABRAL EXPLORES THE NEW WORLD FOR PORTUGAL

Cabral sighted the east coast of South America (at today's Brazil)
this was within the area designated to Portugal under the Treaty of Tordesillas
he claimed the region for Portugal and named it "Island of the True Cross"
(King Manuel renamed it Holy Cross
but it was renamed Brazil after a dyewood found there)
Cabral stayed in (Brazil) for ten days
and then continued on his way around Africa to India
In a trip fraught with storms, shipwrecks (at the Cape of Good Hope) and fighting
(fifty of Cabral's men were killed after an attack from Muslim traders in India
who did not want competition for their spice routes)
however, Cabral successfully traded for spices in Calicut, India
Cabral returned to Portugal with only four of the original thirteen ships remaining
but he delivered the news of his new discoveries in the New World -- June 23, 1501

AMERIGO VESPUCCI TAKES A SECOND VOYAGE TO SOUTH AMERICA

Vespucci, representing Portugal, took a second trip to South America -- 1501-1502
he deduced, for the first time by anyone, that this was an unknown continent
Vespucci mapped his journey south along the east coast of South America
reaching Cananea just south of (today's Sao Paulo, Brazil)
Amerigo Vespucci published an account of his expeditions

⁴⁴ Locations in parenthesis (at today's Brazil) were not known by that name at the time.

accompanied by maps of the region

it is from these maps that Amerigo's name became identified with the Americas
(two additional trips to South America were claimed by Vespucci
but an earlier voyage and a later voyage remain in dispute today)

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS' FINAL EXPEDITIONS ENDS IN FAILURE

Christopher Columbus' fourth expedition consisting of four old ships and 140 men
set sail -- May 11, 1502

purpose of this voyage was to find a strait linking the West Indies
with the Indian Ocean

Columbus was fifty-one years old and sick
he was no longer welcomed in Hispaniola

Columbus and his crew spent two months working along the coast of Central America
they were beset by winds and storm but when they arrived at (today's Panama)
they learned of another ocean located a few days to the south

Columbus thought this was the strait for which he searched
(however, the Isthmus of Panama is blocked by a mountain range)
natives possessed a great deal of gold which they traded with Columbus

Columbus sailed along the southern Central American coast

but his ships, damaged by a hurricane and termites, fell apart while exploring

Columbus and his men were stranded on the island of (Jamaica) for about a year
before they were rescued

Christopher Columbus returned to Spain for the final time -- November 7, 1504

each expedition led by Christopher Columbus ended in failure for him
and disaster for the natives he contacted

as the Spanish prospered, Indians died from disease, massacre and overwork
almost all of the six million Caribbean Indians were dead in a few years
sugar and mining industries grew, but as the supply of Indian labor shrank

(Christopher Columbus died in obscurity at Valladolid, Spain [May 21, 1506])

but his relatives maintained the family title: Admiral of the Ocean Sea
he believed to the end that he had reached Asia)

Age of Exploration was at an end

END OF THE "AGE OF DISCOVERY" IS REACHED

Western hemisphere history is divided into pre-Columbia (before Columbus)
and post-Columbia (after Columbus) eras

Europe established colonies in the New World to exploit the land and mineral wealth
native people and their thriving cultures were overthrown

Crops, animals, ideas and diseases began to cross the Atlantic Ocean regularly

European diseases inadvertently inflicted on natives led to their near extermination

as they had no immunity to the germs
likewise, syphilis began to plague Spain and Italy for the first time
almost half of all crops now in production in Europe originally were American
adding corn to African diet caused a huge population growth
adding potatoes to European diet caused a population explosion
more than two hundred drugs derived from plants discovered by Indians
were taken to Europe

“AGE OF EXPLORATION” REPLACES THE “AGE OF DISCOVERY”

(Spain and Portugal had established the claim of discovery of the New World

Portugal was limited in its new territory

by the papal bull issued by Pope Alexander VI [1493]

and by the Treaty of Tordesillas between Spain and Portugal [1494]

Spain possessed the vast majority of land in the New World by right of discovery

while more discoveries were inevitable, Spain shifted its attention to exploration

which placed defenders of their claims at the sight

Spanish military explorers, conquistadores (conquerors), began to search for wealth
gold and silver which could be extracted and delivered for the glory of Spain

SPANISH IMPORTS SLAVES TO THE NEW WORLD

European domination extended across the nations of Africa

and reached the shores of the Americas

African slaves were imported to the New World

by Christopher Columbus' son -- 1505

Africans died as quickly as the Native Americans

Slave trade, first Indians and then Africans, forced Europe to take notice of race

race became a significant human characteristic used to justify the slave trade

it was useful to think badly of those intended to be exploited

although this “cognitive dissonance” was counter

to previously held attitudes and beliefs

transatlantic slave trade created a racial “underclass” in America

TRADE BETWEEN EUROPE AND THE EAST IS DOMINATED BY MERCHANTS

Merchant ships sailed from Naples, Genoa, Pisa and other Mediterranean ports

they journeyed to India, China and The Indies

(the islands of southeastern Asia -- Indochina)

trade goods were carried by sea where possible and over land where necessary

to exotic places at the eastern end of the Mediterranean Sea

and from these exotic places back

but Venice on the Adriatic Sea became the leading European trading city

Merchants of Venice dominated three trade routes to the East:

- Northern Route -- the Silk Road

Venetian ships carried cloth, furs, metals and European products to Constantinople before being transported across the Black and Caspian seas this route was long and difficult as it was necessary to cross the deserts and mountains of Central Asia where goods were carried by camel this severely limited the goods that could be transported Venetian ships brought back to Italy from Constantinople silks, rugs, jewels, spices such as pepper and cinnamon and other Asian goods

- Central route -- a variation on the Silk Road

allowed the use of ships on the Mediterranean Sea and Persian Gulf but pack animals were necessary to carry goods from Palestine across the Arab Peninsula to the Persian Gulf then by ship to India, China, the East Indies (Borneo) and the Spice Islands (Indonesia)

- Southern route -- Trans-Arabian Route

used the Mediterranean Sea to Alexandria, Egypt an overland trip of about 120 miles was required across the Arab Peninsula (at today's Suez) to the Red Sea then by ship to India, the East Indies, the Spice Islands and China

Ottoman Turks had every reason to keep the old Eastern trade open

PORTUGAL TAKE CONTROL OF EAST-WEST TRADE

Portugal's navy captured the Persian Gulf island of Hormuz from the Turks -- 1507 this conquest gave Portugal full control of the trade between India and Europe that passed through the Persian Gulf following the Silk Roads Central Route Spain, very concerned over the growing power and wealth of Portugal, turned to the New World as a new source of power and wealth

EXPLOITING AMERICAN RESOURCES TRANSFORMED EUROPE

Rise of northern European nations caused a shift in the power base away from the Mediterranean Sea

Italian trade suffered a dramatic decline as trade goods by the ship load arrived in Portugal from the East and in Spain from the New World

Portuguese and Spanish trade allowed other nations to acquire a portion of the new-found wealth

as they expanded the number of nations that became their trading partners

Soon to follow were acts of piracy by other nations, especially Great Britain, who hunted Spanish trade routes and plundered Spanish treasure ships carrying gold, silver and treasure from the American colonies back to the Mother Country

European political and religious leaders quickly amassed wealth
gold and silver from America replaced land as the basis for wealth and status
and increased the power and prestige of the new merchant class
American gold fueled 400% inflation in Europe
this, in turn, eroded the economies of most non-European countries
and eroded local economies while Europe developed a global market system
to acquire goods and even more wealth
Africa suffered from European exploitation
inhabitants suffered from economic depression
Africa's Gold Coast (today's Ghana) could not compete with America
as source of wealth
ancient trans-Saharan trade routes linking Central Africa with North Africa
collapsed

CONQUISTADOR JUAN PONCE DE LEON BECOMES GOVERNOR OF PUERTO RICO

Juan Ponce de Leon he had been a member of Christopher Columbus' second expedition
along with some 1200 sailors, colonists and soldiers
Ponce de Leon was one of 200 "gentlemen volunteers" (guests who did not work)
Juan Ponce de Leon was appointed governor of Puerto Rico by the Spanish Crown -- 1510
on his second visit to the New World he led three ships and about 200 men
de Leon put the natives to work mining gold
Ponce de Leon distributed the natives among the Spanish settlers keeping many for himself
Indians were put to work growing food crops and mining for gold
Spaniards treated the natives very harshly
newly introduced diseases like smallpox and measles
took a severe toll on the local population

PORTUGUESE MARINERS REACH MAINLAND CHINA BY SEA

With new wealth arriving in Portugal from the Central trade route with the East
the nation turned its attention to reaching the Far East by ship
Portuguese explorer Jorge Alvares is credited as the first European explorer
to reach China by sea
Alvares made initial contact when he landed on Southern China's Nei Lingding
(which became known in Europe as Lantian Island)
Alvarez claimed his discovery in the name of the Portugal's King Manuel -- 1513
he negotiated to rent the port of Macau from the Chinese hoping to establish trade
Portugal administered the city under Chinese authority and sovereignty (until [1887]
when Macau became a colony of the Portuguese empire
Macau was transferred back to China [December 20, 1999])
Portugal now had access to an all-water route to the riches of the East

and ships could carry more goods than a caravan of camels
Europeans became very confused regarding where they had landed
Alvares identified the region as China

but Marco Polo, who traveled overland [1271-1295], had named the region Cathay
(Europe will settle on China as the name for the mainland of the Far East)

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR JUAN PONCE de LEON EXPLORES (TODAY'S FLORIDA)

Rumors of undiscovered islands to the northwest of Hispaniola had reached Spain
King Ferdinand urged Ponce de Leon to explore these new lands
de Lon would be governor for life of any lands he discovered
Juan Ponce de Leon equipped three ships with at least 200 men at his own expense
his expedition set out from Puerto Rico -- March 4, 1513
he sighted land which he named it La Florida
(Festival of Flowers for the Easter season)
in addition to gold, Ponce de Leon may have also been searching
for the fabled "Fountain of Youth" to cure his aging
unsuccessful in his search he returned to Puerto Rico

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR VASCO NUNEZ de BALBOA SIGHTS THE PACIFIC OCEAN

(Vasco Nunez de Balboa had accompanied Spanish conquistadors in search of gold
along the east coast of South America where they were forced to abandon their leaky ship
after this unsuccessful effort Balboa tried farming in the Spanish colony of Hispaniola
this also proved to be unsuccessful
Balboa and his dog stowed away on a Spanish ship traveling from Hispaniola
to Spain's new colony of San Sebastian on the east coast of Panama
when the expedition arrived they discovered the colony was burned to the ground
Balboa convinced Spaniards to travel southwest where he had previously visited -- 1513
Spain's first successful colony in Panama, Santa Maria de la Antigua del Darien
was founded
Balboa sailed with hundreds of Spaniards and Indians from this colony
to the Darien Peninsula (today's Colon, Panama)
Balboa led an overland expedition west through very dense rainforests
fighting with local Indians along the way
Balboa attacked an Indian village killing 600 natives -- September 23, 1513
he captured a large supply of food
and appropriated a large treasure of gold and pearls
after the battle those men not wounded or too exhausted to travel
entered the nearby mountains
according to information gathered from the natives,
an ocean could be seen from the summit

Balboa traveled ahead with his dog to the summit -- before noon September 25, 1513
far away on the horizon the waters of an undiscovered sea could be seen
Five days later, Balboa reached the Gulf of San Miguel on the Pacific Ocean -- September 29
Balboa named the body of water the South Sea
he waded into the salt water and ceremonially took possession of the ocean
and any coasts that it might wash in the name of Spain
Balboa built ships on the Pacific side of Panama and sent expeditions north
his concluded California was probably an island
Balboa reported seeing black slaves in an Indian village
Indians said they had been captured from a nearby black community
In a letter to Ferdinand, King of Spain
he noted how easily gold could be obtained in the New World
“Gold was so plentiful that the natives ‘do not care to keep it in baskets’; ...all the rivers in these mountains contain gold: and... they have very large lumps in great abundance. Their method of collecting the gold is by going into the water and gathering it in their baskets. They also scrape it up in the beds of streams, when these are dry.”⁴⁵
(Balboa was later falsely charged with treason against Spain
he had been framed by a friend, Arias de Avila
Balboa was found guilty and was publicly beheaded in Acla, Panama [January 1519])

PACIFIC OCEAN BECOMES A FOCAL POINT FOR EUROPEAN EXPLORERS

Map found in Turkey dated 1513 was said to be based on material
from the library of Alexander the Great -- King of Macedonia [336 BCE- 323 BCE]
he created one of the largest empires of the ancient world
this map included coastline details of South America and Antarctica⁴⁶
it is apparent early European explorers had reached the Americas many times
Based on this and other information systematic expeditions were formed for map-making
but the chief purpose of these voyages was discovery of a passage across the continent
Mythical Strait of Anian as described by Marco Polo was assumed to exist
New World was thought to be an archipelago in which nature had placed islands
so close together that a ship could not pass through

PORTUGAL ESTABLISHES TRADE RELATIONS WITH CHINA

Portugal's King Manuel commissioned a diplomatic and trade mission
to Canton (today's Guangzhou) China -- 1517
this relationship lasted until the death of the Chinese Emperor [1519]
Reports had reached the Chinese court of the terrible behavior of the Portuguese
toward the Chinese

⁴⁵ Strawn, Authur, *Sails and Swords*, P. 103.

⁴⁶ James Loewen, *Lies My Teacher Told Me*, P. 37.

newly formed Ming Chinese court became less interested in foreign trade

PORTUGUESE TRADERS ARE NOT WELCOMED IN CHINA

Continuing their bad behavior Portuguese sailors and traders raided and pillaged villages around the trading posts in Canton (today's Guangzhou) China

Emperor of China ruled that all Portuguese encountered everywhere should be killed on the spot

more than 800 Portuguese citizens were killed

these massacres resulted in the Portuguese survivors fleeing to Macau, China

Relations improved between the Portuguese and Chinese Ming Dynasty

when the Portuguese aided China in eliminating coastal pirates

Portuguese traders were allowed by Chinese officials to anchor their ships in Macau's harbor they could carry out trading activities, but they could not stay onshore

SPANISH CONQUISTADORS CAPTURE THE AZTEC INDIAN EMPIRE

New Spain (Mexico) became Spain's chief source of treasure used to expand Spain's Empire
Hernan Cortes, an educated Spanish aristocrat, settled on the island of Cuba and became a rancher

Spain sent an expedition to explore the coast of New Spain that returned a favorable report this sparked Cortes' dreams of great wealth

Spanish Governor of Cuba, Diego Velazquez chose Cortes

to lead an expedition to establish a colony in New Spain -- 1518

but the governor soon changed his mind and cancelled the expedition

Cortes defied the governor and led a force of 600 men and about twenty horses

to explore the Yucatan Peninsula and attempt to establish a settlement there

he established the town of La Villa Rica de la Vera Cruz

to prevent any possibility of desertion and retreat Cortes burned all of his ships

Cortes learned from local natives about the fabulous riches of the Aztec Empire -- 1519

he marched his troops into the interior to invade the land of the Aztecs

Cortes forced an alliance with the Aztec Indians of Tlaxcala

there he learned about their customs, culture and religion

millions of native common people were ruled by the kings of local city-states

these kings were in turn led by the Emperor Moctezuma II from the capital city

he became most interested in Quetzalcoatl the "Winged God - Feather Serpent"

a light-skinned, bearded God of Civilization revered by the Aztecs

and due to return to the people in this particular year

Cortes marched further inland and reached the city of Tenochtitlan

capital of the Aztec Empire

light-skinned, bearded Cortes appeared to be the god Quetzalcoatl returned to the people

Cortes easily marched his troops into the city and captured Moctezuma

who was forced to swear allegiance to King Carlos V of Spain
Cortes claimed New Spain in the name of King Carlos King Carlos V
when Spanish Governor of Cuba, Diego Velazquez learned how Cortes
had exceeded his authority he sent 1,400 soldiers to arrest Hernan Cortes
whom he disliked personally

SPAIN ATTEMPTS TO FIND A SAFE ALL-WATER TRADE ROUTE TO THE EAST

Ferdinand Magellan was a Portuguese explorer who served King Carlos V of Spain
Magellan was sent to find an all-water route to the “Spice Islands” (modern Indonesia)
Five Ships under Magellan’s command, *Trinidad*, *San Antonio*, *Concepción*, *Victoria*
and *Santiago* left Seville, Spain -- August 10, 1519
they arrived off the coast of South America at the Portuguese territory of Brazil
Magellan avoided land and anchored near (today’s Rio de Janeiro, Brazil) -- December 13
there the crew resupplied before sailing south along South America’s east coast
while scouting the route the *Santiago* was wrecked in a storm
Four ships began an arduous 373-mile long passage through (today’s Strait of Magellan)
scouting ahead with the ship *Concepcion*, the *San Antonio* deserted and returned to Spain
three remaining ships entered the South Pacific
Magellan’s expedition was the first to sail from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean
he named the waters the “Mar Pacifico” (peaceful waters)
because of its apparent stillness
Ferdinand Magellan’s ships reached the islands of the (Mariana) chain and (Guam)
before they arrived at the Philippines with 150 of his crewmen left
Magellan was killed in battle with the natives of the Philippines -- March 17, 1520
additional casualties left the expedition with too few men to sail
all three of the remaining ships
they abandoned and burned the *Concepcion*
Now under the command of Juan Sebastian Elcano, Magellan’s two remaining ships,
Trinidad and *Victoria*, sailed by 115 men, continued on to the Spice Islands
where they successfully traded for valuable spices
Elcano decided to attempt to continue to sail around the globe
this route was unanticipated by their Portuguese rivals
soon, however, the flagship *Trinidad* began to take on water
her crew tried to discover and repair the leak, but failed
Trinidad would need to spend considerable time being overhauled,
but the *Victoria* was not large enough to accommodate all the surviving crew
therefore, the *Victoria* with some of the crew sailed west for Spain
Trinidad followed several weeks behind
Trinidad was captured by the Portuguese and was eventually wrecked in a storm
while at anchor under Portuguese control

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR HERNAN CORTES IS FORCED OUT OF TENOCHTITLAN

Learning of the arrival of Spanish Governor of Cuba, Diego Velazquez's soldiers

Hernan Cortes defeated the governor's troops in a surprise attack

Cortes convinced the survivors of the attack to join him in the conquest of the Aztecs
While Cortes had been away his soldiers had slaughtered 600 Aztec nobles

as he returned to Tenochtitlan he and his soldiers were attacked by Aztec natives -- 1520

Cortes attempted to calm the Aztecs by releasing Montezuma

but the Aztecs stoned him to death

Hernan Cortes and his soldiers were forced out of Tenochtitlan

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR HERNAN CORTES CAPTURES THE AZTEC EMPIRE

Hernan Cortes returned once again to Tenochtitlan with additional reinforcements

because he was still greatly outnumbered, he laid siege to the city

Small pox brought by the Spanish troops struck the Aztec population

Tenochtitlan fell to Cortes -- 1521

Cortes had conquered five million Aztecs with less than 1000 soldiers

Soon after, he began to build *Mexico City* on the Aztec ruins

many Europeans arrived in Mexico City

it soon became the most important European city in North America

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR JUAN PONCE de LEON RETURNED TO FLORIDA

Juan Ponce de Leon organized a colonizing expedition using two ships -- 1521

that consisted of some 200 men, including priests, farmers and artisans,

fifty horses and other domestic animals and farming implements

they landed on the southwest coast of Florida

In an attack by Native Americans Ponce de Leon was injured by a poisoned arrow
that struck his thigh

he and his colonists sailed back to Cuba where he died of his wound

PORTUGAL CONTINUES TO ATTEMPT TO TRADE WITH CHINA

Several more Portuguese trading ships reached the coast of Canton (Guangzhou) China

but were driven away by the now hostile Ming Dynasty authorities -- 1521-1522

When the Portuguese committed even more atrocities, Chinese responded with violent force

Chinese Imperial Government imprisoned, tortured and executed several Portuguese

FERDINAND MAGELLAN'S CREW SAILS AROUND THE GLOBE

Juan Sebastian Elcano and the remaining seventeen men of the *Victoria* arrived in Spain

almost exactly three years after they departed -- September 6, 1522

Men of Magellan's expedition were the first to circumnavigate the globe

they proved the world is round and that the East could be reached by sailing West
they had discovered the true size of the Earth and that America is not part of Asia
however, this exploit was too long and too dangerous to be of economic consequence

HERNAN CORTES BECOMES GOVERNOR OF NEW SPAIN

Because of his conquests and all the gold and jewels he had collected,
Cortes was very popular back home in Spain
Charles V named Hernan Cortes governor and captain general of New Spain -- 1523
Cortes constantly sought to consolidate his power, increase his wealth and restrain his enemies
he promoted the early sugar industry
he sponsored exploration, the building of more cities
and the Roman Catholic evangelization of the native population

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR CONQUERS THE NATIVES OF CENTRAL AMERICA

El Capitan Pedro de Alvarado y Contreras had participated in the conquest of Cuba
and the conquest of the Aztecs led by Hernan Cortes
Pedro de Alvarado was sent out by New Spain Governor Cortes
with 120 horsemen, 300-foot soldiers and several hundred Indian auxiliary fighters
he was engaged in the conquest of the highlands of Guatemala from 1523-[1527]
these Spanish efforts were firmly resisted by the indigenous people
although renowned for his skill as a soldier, Alvarado also was known for his cruelty
Alvarado's inhumanity is documented
mass murders were committed in the conquest of the native peoples of New Spain
he enslaved natives and murdered them by means such as hanging, burning
and throwing them alive to vicious dogs
Alvarado was wounded on his left thigh leaving him handicapped the rest of his life
he abandoned the effort to subjugate the natives and appointed his brother,
Gonzalo de Alvarado, to continue the task attacking the natives -- 1525
this invasion led to the city of San Salvador being established
Gonzalo de Alvarado's second effort brought the natives of Central America
under Spanish control -- 1528
With the conquest of Guatemala completed, El Capitan Pedro de Alvarado y Contreras
was appointed governor of Guatemala -- 1528
he kept this position until his accidental death in a later battle [July 4, 1541]
Pedro de Alvarado is considered to be the conqueror of most of Central America
(El Salvador, Guatemala and Honduras)

HERNAN CORTES RETURNS TO SPAIN

Spanish King Carlos V suspended Hernan Cortes as governor of New Spain [1526]
he returned to Spain -- 1528

while he kept much of his power, he was increasingly opposed by his enemies
(Cortes convinced King Carlos V to allow him to return to New Spain [1530]
but with less power and independence that he had before
he was given the title “captain general” rather than governor
Cortes explored the northwestern part of (Mexico)
and discovered the Baja California peninsula
after exploring the Pacific coast of (Mexico)
Cortes returned to Spain and died near Seville [1547])

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR FRANCISCO PIZARRO CONQUERS THE INCA INDIANS

(Francisco Pizarro was an illegitimate child who grew up illiterate
unskilled, he traveled with Vasco Nunez de Balboa during discovery of the Pacific Ocean
Pizarro also led the soldiers who later arrested Balboa on false charges)
(Reports of Peru’s riches and Cortes’ success in New Spain tantalized Pizarro
he attempted two expeditions to conquer the Inca Empire [1524] and [1526]
both failed as a result of native hostilities, bad weather and lack of provisions)
Pizarro returned to Spain to appeal directly to King Carlos V for funds for a third expedition
his plea was successful and he received not only a license for the proposed expedition
but considerable authority over any lands conquered during the venture
he was joined by family and friends as his third expedition left Panama -- 1530[
When hostile natives along the coast of Peru threatened the expedition,
Pizarro moved inland and founded the first Spanish settlement there, San Miguel de Piura
however, the leader of the Inca natives refused to tolerate the Spanish
their great ruler, Inca (Emperor) Atahualpa attempted to defend his people and land
Pizarro killed thousands of Incas -- Atahualpa was ambushed and captured
Pizarro demanded a ransom for his release
Atahualpa’s subjects filled a room with gold, but Pizarro charged him with crimes
although Pizarro’s associates thought he was overstepping his authority
the conquistador had Atahualpa strangled -- July 26, 1533
Pizarro entered the Inca capital of Cuzco -- the conquest of Peru was complete
Pizarro founded the city of Lima [1535] -- he considered this his greatest achievement
quarrels between Pizarro and his longtime comrade-in-arms Diego Almagro II
resulted in an hour of carnage won by Pizarro’s men
Almagro was captured and executed
embittered, Almagro’s son assassinated Pizarro in Lima [June 26, 1541]
the conqueror of Peru was laid to rest in the Lima Cathedral
Conquistador Francisco Pizarro’s conquest of the Inca Empire had given Spain
control of Western South America and access to the Southern Pacific Ocean

JAQUES CARTIER LEADS A FRENCH EXPEDITION TO THE NEW WORLD

Jacques Cartier was born in Saint-Malo, France [1491]

he was introduced to King Francis by the abbot of the Mont Saint Michel monastery
King Francis commissioned Cartier to explore the New World

with the hope of finding a “Northwest Passage” to the to the wealthy markets of Asia
Cartier set sail from Saint-Malo, France with a crew of convicts paroled from jails
and impressed (placed) into maritime service -- April 20, 1534

he crossed the Atlantic Ocean in twenty days and reached Newfoundland
Cartier explored parts of Newfoundland (first discovered by John Cabot [1497])

and the Gulf of St. Lawrence (first discovered by the Vikings [1000])

Cartier’s first two contacts with Native Americans were brief

his third encounter was with a party of St. Lawrence Iroquois Indians
that resulted in some trade

Cartier placed a cross ten meters across on the shore of (today’s Gaspé Bay)
that bore the words: “Long Live the King of France”

he took possession of the territory in the name of Francis

just as John Cabot had done for England before him [1497]

Jacques Cartier returned to Saint-Malo, France -- September 1534

sure that he had reached an Asian island

he brought two Iroquois Indian captives with him to France

he was the first European to describe and map the Gulf of Saint Lawrence
and the shores of the Saint Lawrence River

While Spain continued to enslave the natives and extract minerals from the Americas

French explorers beginning with Jacques Cartier developed the fur trade with the Indians

Frenchmen took up fishing the Grand Banks of Newfoundland developed land bases

JACQUES CARTIER’S SECOND VOYAGE TO NORTH AMERICA FOR FRANCE

Jacques Cartier set sail on a second voyage with three ships, 110 men
and his two Iroquois Indian captives -- May 19, 1535

When he reached the St. Lawrence River he sailed up-river 1,000 miles
reaching the area of (today’s Montreal) with his smallest ship

he was greeted by a crowd of over a thousand Native Americans
who came to the river’s edge

Cartier’s expedition could proceed no further as the river was blocked by rapids

he was certain that the river was the Northwest Passage and that these rapids
were all that was preventing him from sailing to China,

he named the La Chine rapids (French for China)

(later the town at the rapids was named La Chine, Quebec)

JACQUEST CARTIER SPENDS THE WINTER IN NORTHERN NORTH AMERICA

Cartier and his men prepared for the winter by strengthening their fort, stacking firewood

and salting down game and fish
Scurvy broke out first among the Iroquois natives and then among the French
Cartier learned from the local chief, Donnacona, that a concoction
made from a tree (probably *arbor vitae*) would cure scurvy
with this treatment eighty-five Frenchmen survived the winter
Cartier decided to take Chief Donnacona with him back to France to describe
the country to the north that the native said was full of gold, rubies and other treasures
After an arduous trip down the St. Lawrence River and a three-week Atlantic crossing,
Cartier and his men arrived in Saint-Malo, France -- July 15, 1536

CONQUISTADOR HERNANDO DE SOTO EXPLORES EASTERN NORTH AMERICA

(Hernando de Soto first arrived in the New World [1514])
he accompanied Spanish Conquistador Francisco Pizarro
during the attack on the Inca Empire
de Soto had guarded the Inca Emperor Atahualpa
and taught the native to play chess [1533]
while de Soto was on a scouting expedition Pizarro had Atahualpa strangled
de Soto received a portion of the vast storehouse of gold
delivered to ransom the chief)
De Soto returned to Spain with an enormous share of the Spanish conquest of the Incas
even though he could have retired a wealthy man after collecting so much treasure
he decided to continue exploring
he was named governor of Cuba by Spanish King Carlos V -- 1537
and was given the assignment to colonize North America for Spain within four years
Hernando de Soto set out to explore North America
he arrived on the west coast of Florida -- May 30, 1539
with ten ships carrying over 600 soldiers, priests and explorers
(for nearly four years he led his men in a fruitless far-ranging search for gold
over what is now the southeastern United States)

DE ULLOA WAS SENT BY CORTES TO EXPLORE THE COAST OF NEW SPAIN

Spanish Conquistador Francisco de Ulloa journeyed with three ships
to explore the coast of New Spain and northward -- 1539
he discovered and named the Sea of Cortes (today's Gulf of California)
after reaching the head of the Gulf they turned south to the tip of Baja California
Ulloa rounded the tip of land and sailed North into the Pacific Ocean
one of Ulloa ships became separated from the other two and returned south
Ulloa continued to sail north accompanied by his second ship
to about 28° north just south of Cedros Island, Mexico half way up the Baja peninsula
Ulloa and his flag ship never returned from this portion of the trip

however, his accompanying vessel returned to New Spain -- 1540

JACQUES CARTIER TAKES HIS THIRD VOYAGE TO NORTH AMERICA FOR FRANCE

Cartier once again departed Saint-Malo on his third voyage

this time with five ships -- May 23, 1541

any thought of finding a passage to Asia was forgotten

France's goals now were find the land of gold, rubies and other treasures

and to establish a permanent settlement along the St. Lawrence River

Convicts and other colonists were landed,

those cattle that had survived three months aboard ship were turned loose,

earth was tilled for a kitchen garden -- cabbage, turnip and lettuce seeds were planted

Charlesbourg-Royal, a fortified settlement, was built and named

(at present-day Cap-Rouge, Quebec)

another fort was also built for added protection on the cliff overlooking the settlement

Men began collecting what they believed to be diamonds and gold

(but which upon return to France were discovered to be merely quartz crystals

and iron pyrite -- fool's gold)

Europeans brought not only settlers and treasure hunters and new religion to the New World,

they also brought alcohol, disease and weapons which changed the natives lives forever

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR HERNANDO De SOTO REACHES THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER

De Soto's exact route is often in doubt but his expedition seems to have passed through

(today's Florida, Georgia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Alabama and Mississippi

he even crossed the Mississippi River into the American Southwest) -- 1541

in his search for gold and silver he made brutal contact with five Native American tribes

Cherokees, Seminoles, Creeks, Appalachians and Choctaws

winter 1541-[1542] was spent west of the Mississippi River

(in today's Arkansas and Louisiana)

FRANCE'S JACQUES CARTIER CONTINUES EXPLORATION OF NORTH AMERICA

Cartier left the colony of Charlesbourg-Royal using longboats

for a reconnaissance to find the land of wealth -- 1541

When he returned to Charlesbourg-Royal, Cartier found the situation ominous

Iroquois no longer made friendly visits or peddled fish and game,

now they prowled about in a sinister manner

Native Americans attacked and killed about thirty-five of the settlers

before the Frenchmen could retreat behind their fortifications

(For the final time Cartier sailed for France [early June 1542]

Jacques Cartier was the first to document the name "Canada"

to designate the territory on the shores of the St. Lawrence River

this name was derived from the Huron-Iroquois word “**kanata**” [village]
which was incorrectly interpreted as a native term for the newly discovered land)

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR HERNANDO de SOTO DIES

Hernando de Soto died of a fever -- May 21, 1542

his body was sunk in the Mississippi River to protect it from the natives

De Soto’s men, now led by Luis Moscoso de Alvarado, descended the Mississippi River
from its confluence with the Arkansas River to the Gulf of Mexico in nineteen days
Hernando de Soto’s men had discovered and mapped lower Mississippi River area

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR CABRILLO EXPLORES THE CALIFORNIA COAST

Spain heard rumors that Portugal discovered a strait that linked the Atlantic with the Pacific
perhaps this was the Strait of Anian identified in Marco Polo’s account of his travels

Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo had been a conquistador under Hernan Cortes

his success in mining gold in Guatemala made him

one of the richest of the conquistadores in Mexico

Cabrillo was then commissioned by the new Viceroy of New Spain, Antonio de Mendoza,
to lead a three-ship expedition up the Pacific coast to 30° North

in search of trade opportunities and to find a way to China

or to find the mythical Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)

Cabrillo accompanied by his pilot Bartolome Ferrelo (sometimes Ferrer)

set out from Navidad, New Spain to explore the coast of California -- June 27, 1542

Cabrillo reached Cedros Island midway up Baja California as had Francisco de Ulloa [1539]

Cabrillo was the first to record the name California,

but that name was probably well known

Cabrillo continued north into uncharted waters discovering and giving Spanish names
to such places as San Diego Bay, Santa Catalina Island, San Pedro Bay
and Santa Monica Bay

he reached as far north as the (Russian River) -- (today’s Sacramento area)

before autumn storms forced them to turn back to Southern California

SPANISH CONQUISTADOR CABRILLO WINTERS ON SANTA CATALINA ISLAND

Cabrillo and his three ships spent the winter at (Santa Catalina Island)

making repairs -- 1542-1543

while trying to rescue some of his men from an attack Cabrillo stepped out of his boat

he stumbled onto a jagged rock and splintered his shin -- around Christmas Eve

his injury became infected and developed gangrene -- he died January 3, 1543

Cabrillo’s second-in-command, Bartolome Ferrelo, had been ordered by Cabrillo

to “**Sail Northward at all hazard**”⁴⁷

⁴⁷ Edmond Meany, *History of the State of Washington*, P. 9.

Ferrelo continued the voyage of discovery as far north as 43°
where he saw the coast of (Cape Blanco on today's Oregon coast)
excessive cold, lack of provisions, sickness and deteriorating conditions of his vessel
forced Ferrelo to return south

Cabrillo-Ferrelo expedition had added 800 miles of mapped landfall for Spain
however, none of the Cabrillo-Ferrelo expedition charts appear to have survived
Spanish policy was to keep geographic details secret
so they could not be used by their enemies

SPAIN'S INTEREST TURNS FROM EXPLORATION TO TRADE WITH THE EAST

Spain decided to concentrate her efforts in developing commercial interests in Asia
partly due to political difficulties with England as Spanish Catholic Prince Philip
married English Catholic Queen Mary and became King of England and Ireland
Philip and "Bloody Mary" persecuted English Protestants
in their own version of the inquisition
partly because the King's astrologer predicted little gold would be found
outside of the tropics Spain saw no pressing need to establish colonies
leaving Portugal free to roam the Pacific Ocean

SPAIN REACHES THE ISLANDS OF THE PHILIPPINES

Viceroy of New Spain Antonia de Mendoza
was the first New World colonial administrator
he commissioned explorer Ruy Lopez de Villalobos to sail to the West
in search of islands
Villalobos led a fleet of six galleons from New Spain (Mexico)
with about 400 men [November 1, 1542]
small islands (today's Eniwetok and Ulithi) were reached -- January 1543
as the expedition continued on, one of the ships became separated during a severe storm
Villalobos reached the Philippines -- February 29, 1543
Villalobos named the island group Las Islas Filipinas (The Philippine Islands)
in honor of Spanish Prince Philip II
extreme hunger forced them to stay for thirty-two days as they searched for food
unexpectedly the lost galleon appeared with a load of rice and other foodstuffs
two ships were sent to resupply where food had been discovered
Arrival of Villalobos' fleet in the Philippines was challenged in a letter
received from Jorge de Castro, Portuguese governor of the Spice Islands
Villalobos responded in a letter that they were not trespassing
as they were within the Line of Demarcation
Driven from their place of refuge by hostile natives, hunger and a shipwreck,
Lopez de Villalobos was forced to abandon the expedition

he and his crew members sought shelter from the Portuguese in the Spice Islands
however, quarreling led to the imprisonment of the Spanish expedition
Ruy Lopez de Villalobos died in prison --1544
Some 117 remaining Spanish crew members survived prison
100 of Villalobos' crewmen returned to Lisbon, Spain
one survivor, Guido de Lavezaris, produced a manuscript
of Magellan's [1519-1522] voyage
(it was discovered in the 20th century and was published [1920])

CONQUISTADOR HERNAN CORTES RETURNS TO SPAIN A HERO

Cortes returned to Spain and was be given the title "Marques" for his conquest of the Aztecs
Spanish officials grew to fear Cortes
because of the vast power he had developed in New Spain
he was denied any government post and his reputation was be destroyed
he died in disgrace near Seville, Spain -- December 2, 1547

BEAVER HATS BECOME THE RAGE IN EUROPE

Soft yet resilient beaver pelts could be used to make hats of a variety of shapes
from the still-familiar top hat to the British navy cocked hat worn by admirals
and popular colonial tri-corner cocked hat
these hats dominated European fashion 1550-[1850]
no self-respecting European was without one

MUSCOVY COMPANY IS CHARTERED IN ENGLAND

Muscovy Company (also called the Russian Company or the Muscovy Trading Company)
was an English joint stock trading company that was chartered --1555
Richard Chancellor, founder of the company, navigated for his fleet of three ships
as they set out for Moscow, Russia
Muscovy Company had a monopoly on trade between England and Muscovy
(Moscow, Russia)
this company undertook the search for the Northwest Passage to China

PORTUGAL ESTABLISHES A COLONY IN MACAU, CHINA

Local Chinese officials allowed the Portuguese to settle in Macau, China
and use the port as an outpost from which they could conduct trade -- 1557
laws of Portugal were applied to the colony
Using Macau, the Portuguese acted as intermediaries in the trade of Chinese goods
for spices and other Asian goods to be sold all across Europe
unfortunately, the Portuguese in Macau were regularly cut off
from the rest of their Asian empire

Diplomatic relations between Portugal and China were reestablished
when Lionel de Sousa became the second Portuguese Governor of Macau -- 1558

SPANISH SHIPS CARRY WEALTH EXTRACTED FROM THE AMERICAS TO SPAIN

Stretch of coastline along the northern coast of South America,
across Central America and the Caribbean and into the southern part of North America
was controlled by Spain beginning in the mid-16th Century (and lasting 200 years)
this region became known as the “Spanish Main”
Spanish colonies in the Americas stretched across the huge swath of land
which was rich in gold, minerals, spices and a variety of other exotic treasures
Spain exported minerals and other natural resources in large treasure ships, galleons,
which often traveled in fleets for protection
By watching a few key ports along the Spanish Main, pirates and other raiders
discovered the best time to strike the unprotected treasure ships

ENGLAND COMES OF AGE AS A NATION

(Period of English history which centered on King Henry VIII was brutal and confusing
Henry believed he needed a son who would inherit the throne of England and Ireland
he had two daughters, Elizabeth and Mary
(Henry divorced two of his six wives, Catherine Parr and Anne Boleyn,
although divorce was not accepted in the Catholic Church
two others, Catherine Howard and Anne of Cleves, were executed,
Queen Jane Seymour died and his final wife, Catherine of Aragon, was widowed)
Catholic Pope Clement VII excommunicated [removed]
England’s King Henry from the Catholic Church
Henry’s daughters Elizabeth was raised as a Protestant [protestor]
while Mary was raised Catholic
Henry’s third wife, Jane Seymour, bore him a son Edward who sickly
after Henry VIII’s death [1547], Edward VI reigned as King of England and Ireland
until his death [1553])
(Death of Edward VI threw England and Ireland into political turmoil
Henry VIII’s Catholic daughter, Mary Tudor, married Spain’s Prince Philip II
who also was Catholic
Mary became Queen of England and Philip became King of England
but she was seen as a threat by English Protestants
Elizabeth, a Protestant and Mary’s half-sister, was the choice of Protestants
to be queen of England
a series of uprisings pitted Catholics and Protestants against each other
earning the Catholic queen the title “Bloody Mary”)
Queen Mary imprisoned Elizabeth in the Tower of London

Elizabeth was released after a few months
Bloody Mary died and Philip II lost the title King of England -- November 1558
leaving the Protestant Elizabeth to become Queen of England

ELIZABETH BECOMES QUEEN OF ENGLAND

As Elizabeth set out to rule she depended heavily on her trusted advisers -- November 1558
she established an English Protestant church and became its Supreme Governor
(this church evolved into the Church of England)

It was expected that Elizabeth would marry and produce an heir to continue the Tudor line
despite numerous courtships she never married but used her royal position
to court favorable agreements with European kings to advance her empire
she ruled a relatively peaceful nation for forty-five years

Elizabeth's reign was known as the "Elizabethan Age" is remembered for two achievements:

- English drama, led by playwrights such as William Shakespeare and Christopher Marlowe;
- seafaring prowess of English adventurers and pirates known as "Elizabethan Sea Dogs"

ENGLAND PLUNDERS THE WEALTH OF OTHER EUROPEAN NATIONS

English sea captains, Elizabethan Sea Dogs, explored and expanded the English empire
privateers (pirates) were licensed by the English government to attack treasure ships
Sir Walter Raleigh, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, Martin Frobisher, John Hawkins, George Anson,
William Dampier, Thomas Cavendish and Sir Francis Drake -- the greatest of all
searched for the Northwest Passage, took part in the slave trade from Africa
and engaged in attacks on Spanish shipping in the Caribbean
their plunder added greatly to the treasury of Queen Elizabeth

FRANCIS DRAKE ENTERS THE SLAVE TRADE

Francis Drake undertook several expeditions to capture slaves sent to the Caribbean-- 1563
forcibly removed people from the coast of West Africa
were sold into slavery to Spanish plantations
although kidnapping and forced transportation of people was illegal under English law
Two sources usually supplied the victims of slavery:

- attacks on African towns and villages with the assistance of rival African warlords;
- attacks on Portuguese and Spanish slave ships whose cargo was people

Drake was a strict sea captain who was intolerant of stupidity

he was quick to punish but he was equally fast to recognize merit and industry

he possessed an appealing sense of humor and an equally hot temper

he was characterized as firm, fair and just

PORTUGAL EXPANDS ITS TRADE IN MACAU, CHINA

Portugal was granted special treaty rights by the Chinese to conduct trade -- 1564
Portuguese could conduct business within the restricted area of Macau, China
which was placed under Portuguese administration
however, China retained sovereignty
and Chinese residents were subject to Chinese law
Chinese built a wall across the small peninsula on which Macau was located
Portugal set up a trading factory and threw open the port of Macau to Western trade
European trade with China was again undertaken -- Chinese collected a port tax
Portuguese were allowed to go forty miles inland to Canton (today's Guangzhou) to trade
but only twice a year

SPAIN COLONIZES THE ISLANDS OF THE PHILIPPINES

Spain established a colony in the archipelago -- 1565
trade with the Portuguese in Macau, China was soon begun
carrying goods to Acapulco, New Spain (Mexico)
Spain developed Manila-Acapulco trade route used by the galleon treasure fleet
composed of large, multi-decked sailing ships laden with spices, silver
and bee's wax used in making candles
after leaving China the Manila-Acapulco trade route ran north until trade winds
and the Japanese current bore the ships west into North American waters
Spanish merchant men avoided the North American coast
and continued on to New Spain
Manila trade not easy -- no ship's captain ever dreamed of sailing with a small crew
navigation had progressed very little beyond compass and astrolabe to determine latitude
being becalmed in the tropics was a reality -- as were the sweltering nights
ocean waters held man-eating sharks and, it was believed, ship-swallowing monsters
Beriberi, scurvy, shipwreck, savages, starvation and storms
often cut crews to 1/10th their original strength
fear of violent death and cannibalism by the natives were constant companions of sailors
Soon Macau, China was visited by Spanish traders and merchants from other nations
who sailed under false ownership paper and false Portuguese flags
islands of the Philippines, controlled by Spain, developed as a stop
on the Macau trade route

SPANISH INTEREST IN NORTH AMERICA CENTERS ON ITS OCEANS

First North American sources of wealth for the Spanish were the ocean waters
which provided walrus and whale
from a single whale as many as four hundred barrels of oil could be extracted
great demand for fish in Roman Catholic countries assured large profits
from the Newfoundland and Grand Banks fishing grounds

Because of the success of the Manila Trade
between Acapulco (Mexico) and the Philippines
Spain temporarily lost interest in the Northwest
rather she focused her attention on commercial interests in the East
and maintained her established trade route:
Manila, The Philippines to Acapulco, Mexico -- and return

FRANCIS DRAKE CONDUCTS RAIDS ON THE SPANISH MAIN

After participating in the slave trade for almost ten years
Francis Drake hit on another scheme
Drake sailed the Spanish Main on a ship owned and commanded by John Hawkins – 1572
he embarked on his first major raiding enterprise with a crew of seventy-three
traveling to the Atlantic mainland of North and Central America and the Caribbean
he planned an attack on the Isthmus of Panama -- part of the Spanish Main
silver and gold treasure of Peru had to be landed on the Pacific side of Panama
to be sent overland to the Caribbean Sea where Spanish galleons would receive it
for delivery to Spain
Francis Drake attacked a richly laden Spanish mule train -- 1573
capturing twenty tons of silver and gold -- most of it was buried because it was too heavy
his crew carried what they could eighteen miles over jungle-covered mountains
only to find their boats were gone with the Spanish were not far behind
Drake and his men built a raft which he sailed with two volunteers to his ship
he, his men and his treasure were saved
Spain developed the convoy system
where several war ships protected valuable treasure ships
Drake hit on the idea of sailing to the Pacific coast
where gold ships were still unprotected

ENGLISH CAPTIAN FROBISHER TAKES HIS FIRST VOYAGE TO NORTH AMERICA

Captain Martin Frobisher was an English privateer, navigator, explorer and naval officer
he began his career in northwestern Africa transporting slaves for several years
before he began looting French ships in the English Channel
Frobisher decided to search of the Northwest Passage to China
it took him five years to raise the necessary capital to fund the expedition
Frobisher managed to convince the Muscovy Company to underwrite his expedition
Supported by England's Queen Elizabeth, Frobisher sailed three ships to the New World
Gabriel and *Michael*, about twenty-five tons each, and an unnamed ship of ten tons
(tonnage was a measure of volume and not weight)
they reached the Shetland Islands with a total crew of thirty-five -- June 7, 1576
his unnamed ship was lost in a storm and the *Michael* was abandoned

Gabriel sailed around Newfoundland

Frobisher sighted the east coast of the mainland of “Labrador”
Frobisher discovered the mouth of “Frobisher Bay”
but was blocked from sailing north by ice and wind
he decided to sail west to see if the passage connected with the Pacific Ocean
he reached “Baffin Island” before turning for England
carrying with him a black stone to see if it was gold-bearing
it was not but it did convince the Muscovy Company to fund another trip

MARTIN FROBISHER TAKES HIS SECOND VOYAGE TO NORTH AMERICA

Frobisher led a second much larger expedition back to northern North America
this effort was funded by the Muscovy Company and by Queen Elizabeth -- 1577
he was appointed high admiral of all lands and waters that may be discovered by him
the queen loaned him a 200-ton ship, the *Ayde*
Frobisher set out from Blackwall, England with 150 men including miners, refiners,
gentlemen (guests who did not work) and soldiers
they entered Frobisher Bay -- the high admiral solemnly took possession
in the name of the queen
Several weeks were spent in collecting ore -- very little was done in the way of discovery
there were some skirmishes with Native Americans as the members of the expedition
collected 200 tons of ore thought to be gold
which turned out to be Iron Pyrite (fool’s gold)

ENGLISH CAPTAIN FRANCIS DRAKE RAIDS THE SPANISH MAIN

Queen Elizabeth sent Francis Drake on an expedition against the Spanish -- 1577-[1578]
Drake sailed out of Plymouth, England at age thirty-six -- December 13, 1577
with five ships, one hundred-fifty men and fourteen boys
he was lavishly outfitted with the best materials and equipment
Drake did not tell the crew of their destination until they reached the coast of Africa
Drake’s expedition stopped at Morocco, in northwest Africa
and the Cape Verde Islands -- a Portuguese possession off the West coast of Africa
Drake soon sighted and captured a Portuguese ship
he kidnapped a pilot who was familiar with Brazil -- Drake’s destination

FRANCIS DRAKE SET SAIL FOR THE NEW WORLD

Drake led a brilliant clandestine series of raids along the east coast of South America
to capture and sink slow-moving, over-laden Spanish treasure ships
Land was sited north of Rio de la Plata (river) (in today’s Argentina) -- April 5, 1578
as the fleet headed south Drake had difficulty maintaining communications with his ships
He was unsuccessfully attacked by natives (at Port St. Julian, Argentina)

this attack, along with the hazards of the sea, lowered the morale of his men
After the battle, word of a mutiny led by Drake's close friend Captain Thomas Doughty
leaked out and was told to Drake

Drake ordered a company of men ashore to try Captain Doughty for treason
court was convened under strict rules
in the custom of the day, Drake acted as chief judge
witnesses were heard and a verdict of guilty was delivered
some say Drake spent the afternoon closeted in his cabin with Doughty
they lunched, opened a bottle of wine and had a long chat
together they left the cabin arm in arm walking down the sand
Doughty bade his friend an affectionate farewell
then placed his head on a block of wood and was executed
Drake's sense of justice outweighed his regard for his friend
Drake's expedition remained at Port St. Julian for more than six weeks
making repairs, resting his men and planning -- two of his ships could not be saved
these were destroyed

Francis Drake set out with three ships for the Strait of Magellan -- August 17, 1578
reaching South America's southern tip he fought raging tides and winds for three weeks
they faced a nightmare scene of plunging seas, interminable gales and easy shipwreck
one of his ships was wrecked by a storm
another ship was blown off course and returned to England
Drake entered the Pacific Ocean with his one remaining ship -- the *Pelican*
which he renamed the *Golden Hind* in honor of the coat of arms
of his close friend Sir Christopher Hatton which featured this female red deer

ENGLISHMAN MARTIN FROBISHER'S THIRD VOYAGE TO NORTH AMERICA

Undeterred by the lack of success during Frobisher's first two efforts in North America
Queen Elizabeth sent out an even larger expedition with all of the necessities
to establish a colony of 100 men in northern North America
this expedition consisted of fifteen ships which left Plymouth, England -- 1578
bound for Frobisher Bay by way of Greenland
Stormy weather and dangerous ice caused Frobisher to enter a new body of water
he sailed about sixty miles into (Hudson Strait)
which leads to (what later became Hudson Bay)
before setting sail for Frobisher Bay
Some small attempts were made to found a colony
but dissension and discontent stopped the effort
tons of ore were mined to be shipped to England -- all Iron Pyrite

FRANCIS DRAKE SAILS THE SOUTH SEA (PACIFIC OCEAN)

Turning north Drake sailed up the Pacific along the coast of (today's Chili) pirating as he went -- 1578
he attacked Spanish ports, plundered towns and captured silver mule trains as he journeyed, he sacked the port city (of Valparaiso in Chile)
where he also captured the *Grand Captain of the South* loaded with Chilean wine unaware Spanish sailors had never seen a foreign sail in this port
after plundering the ship Drake cut the ship's cables and masts
to prevent pursuit
nothing was too small to be of interest -- nothing was too large to prevent being attacked
Drake attacked the *Callao de Lima* but was disappointed by the lack of treasure
one ship held only 80£ of gold but it was stopped and pirated
no cargo was insignificant
when Spanish ships were captured Drake took their more accurate charts
he captured Portugal's chief treasure ship, the *Glory of the South Seas* near Lima, Peru
she was loaded with Peruvian gold (worth \$7 million today)
Drake learned another Spanish galleon, *Our Lady of the Conception*,
was sailing toward Manila in the Philippines
he gave chase and eventually captured his most valuable treasure
eighty pounds of gold, twenty-six tons of silver bars, a golden crucifix,
several boxes of pearls and jewels and thirteen chests full of precious metal coins
By the time he reached the West coast of New Spain (Mexico)
he had filled his ship with plunder

ENGLISH CAPTAIN FRANCIS DRAKE REACHES NORTHERN NEW SPAIN (MEXICO)

Somewhere north of Spain's northern-most claim at Point Loma
Drake found a good port and landed -- June 17, 1579
in need of maintenance he took five weeks for repairs and to restock his vessel
Francis Drake took formal possession of the land for England's Queen Elizabeth
he gave the region the name Nova Albion (Latin for "New Britain")
because he was reminded of home

FRANCIS DRAKE WAS THE FIRST TO SAIL NORTH OF CALIFORNIA

After five weeks in port Drake sailed the *Golden Hind* north
four factors possibly determined his route back to England:

- to go back the direction he came was foolhardy
Spanish men-of-war and armed merchant ships waited for his return;
- this was the worst time of year to sail around Cape Horn
(southern tip of South America);
- he learned of the expected arrival of the annual Spanish galleon from the Philippines
Drake sailed north looking for the Manila treasure ship, but it eluded him

•if he could find the Strait of Anian (Northwest Passage)
he could sail directly back to England
Drake's log of his journey is not a very accurate -- he was escaping not exploring
many historians believe he turned directly West (from today's San Francisco region)
other historians believe Drake kept sailing North in uncharted waters
Drake recorded that he reached 42° North (near the present California-Oregon border)
but was turned back by cold weather -- July 23, 1579
however, it seems Drake may have reached 48° North
(the Washington-British Columbia border)
Drake's description of the land fits either Oregon or Washington
"...the rain which fell was an unnatural substance..."
two days later: **"...there followed most vile, thicke, and stinking fogges."**
Drake himself was more than a little prone to exaggeration
so too was Chaplain Francis Fletcher who was the actual keeper of the ship's log
Drake referred to him as **"ye falsest knave that liveth"**⁴⁸

FRANCIS DRAKE DECIDED TO RETURN TO ENGLAND

Drake and his crew were in no condition to return through the Straits of Magellan
Golden Hind carried far too much cargo
and there were too many crew members who were wounded from battles
and battered by storms
At some point Drake turned westward across the Pacific Ocean
away from waiting Spanish war ships
he reached (today's Indonesia) and stopped at the Spice Islands
he reached the Philippines sixty-eight days after leaving the coast of North America
he sailed for England by way of the Cape of Good Hope, up the west coast of Africa
and continued right under the nose of the unsuspecting Spanish navy
Francis Drake sailed the *Golden Hind* into Plymouth, England -- September 26, 1580
with fifty-nine of his original 164 men remaining
he brought with him ten tons of silver and 101 pounds of gold and a rich cargo of spices
Queen's half-share of cargo surpassed the rest of the crown's income for that year

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE IS KNIGHTED BY QUEEN ELIZABETH

Francis Drake believed he may have found the western entrance to the Northwest Passage
a fabled short-cut from Europe to the Pacific Ocean
he was first Englishman to sail around the world -- sixty years after Magellan's crew
but to the Spanish he was a pirate -- he weakened Spanish control of the New World
Drake was knighted aboard the *Golden Hind* by Queen Elizabeth -- April 4, 1581
however, the queen demanded Drake's route be kept secret

⁴⁸ Cecil Dryden, *History of Washington*, 1968, P. 28.

England was just beginning to emerge as a naval power
and was experiencing fierce competition with Spain
Elizabeth did not want any information to reach the Spanish
if he had discovered what he thought might be the Northwest Passage
it would be vital to keep the information secret from the Spanish
Sir Francis Drake and his crew were sworn to secrecy -- his journals and maps were seized
these became known as "The Queen's Maps" and were available to only a very few
But Sir Francis Drake may have been frustrated by Queen Elizabeth's policy of secrecy
he may have leaked bits of information to early cartographers (map makers)
who were anxious for information on the geography of the Western Hemisphere
purported copies of Drake's maps were published 1582, 1586, [1589] and [1596]
at least two maps based on Drake's activities show details of Western North America
"Dutch Drake Map" [1586] shows what may well be the outline
of the British Columbia coast and what may be (today's Prince of Wales Island,
Queen Charlotte Island, Vancouver Island and the Olympic Peninsula)
Cartographer Jodocus Hondius drew a world map edited by Sir Francis Drake [1589]
Drake's "Port New Albion" appears in a sketch
Shakespeare, Drake's contemporary, made reference to New Albion
(Drake's logs, paintings and charts were destroyed when Whitehall Palace burned [1698])

ANGLO-SPANISH WAR PITS PROTESTANT ENGLAND AGAINST CATHOLIC SPAIN

England and Spain were rivals since Queen Elizabeth created the Church of England [1558]
Spain's Catholic King Philip II (the former king of England) believed that England
was actually a Catholic nation that was dominated by a Protestant Queen
English privateers (pirates to the Spanish) were licensed by the English government
to attack treasure ships sailing the Spanish Main
selling African slaves in Caribbean Spanish colonies was considered smuggling in Spain
English privateers increased their wealth and the Royal treasury with the slave trade
In retaliation for the execution of England's Catholic Queen Mary -- 1587
King Philip II vowed to invade England to place a Catholic monarch on its throne again
Spanish navy developed a huge armada (fleet) of vessels
132 Spanish war ships carrying 18,000 sailors and 8,000 soldiers
along with 3,165 cannons
Sir Francis Drake led a preemptive raid on two of Spain's main ports: Cadiz and Corunna
Drake sailed the coast of Spain intercepting and destroying
thirty-seven Spanish naval and merchant ships
he estimated he captured between 1,600 and 1,700 barrel staves
enough to make 25,000 to 30,000 barrels to carry water and provisions
for the Spanish Armada
provisions and water had to be stored in barrels made of green (uncured) wood

this attack delayed Spain's planned invasion by a year

SPANISH ARMADA BEGINS ITS INVASION OF ENGLAND

Spain's Armada sailed up the English Channel as darkness approached -- July 21, 1588

Sir Francis Drake captured the Spanish galleon *Rosario* which was leading the fleet
this ship's lantern was being followed by the armada

when it was distinguished by the attacking English, Spain's fleet fell into disarray

Drake organized fire-ships (burning vessels that floated downriver toward the Spanish)

most of the Spanish captains broke formation

and sailed into the open sea -- July 21-22, 1588

Spain's invasion of England was unsuccessful and the armada sailed back to Spain

England was placed in a position to become "Queen of the Seas"

(she ruled the oceans for the next 200 years

free to explore the South Seas looking for an Unknown Continent to develop

free to establish trade with India along the old Portuguese trade route)

SPANISH TRADE IN THE NEW WORLD DECLINES

Spain had long taken advantage of the easy fortune to be made in the New World

by exploiting the inhabitants and the natural resources located there

But the defeat of the Spanish Armada began the decline of Spain's power in the New World

Spain's loss gave opportunity for England, France and Holland

to participate in the colonization of the Americas as competitors of Spain

Facing challenges to North America's Eastern seaboard from England, France and Holland

Spain was gradually forced to settle for the less exciting but more stable business of trade

primarily between New Spain (Mexico) and the Philippines

no longer did the Strait of Anian seem an important goal

England, however, would benefit greatly from a Northwest Passage to Asia

if it could be found

MAPS BECOME INCREASINGLY ACCURATE

One hundred years after the [1492] voyage of Christopher Columbus

sailors were becoming very skillful in their craft

Huge blanks in the world's maps were being filled with great accuracy

Venice, Italy was still the meeting place for sailors from all over Europe

except for Spain and Portugal, most of world's trade was along Mediterranean Sea

and was controlled by Italians and Arabs

JUAN DE FUCA DISCOVERS AN OPENING ON THE NORTH AMERICAN COAST

Apostolos Valerianos was a Greek navigator born on the Greek Island of Cephalonia

he said he sailed as a pilot for Spain for forty years under the name Juan de Fuca

he served in the West Indies and in the trade between the Philippines and New Spain
Juan de Fuca claimed to discover a great strait just North of 47° -- 1592

he claimed to have sailed East through the strait for twenty days

discovering many islands and an inland sea

he noted people wore skins and were rich in gold, silver and pearls

for his effort he received neither reward nor commendation

from the Viceroy of New Spain (Mexico)

Juan de Fuca was in Venice, Italy where he met English trader Michael Lok -- 1596

Juan de Fuca told the story of how [in 1592] he was sent by New Spain's Viceroy

to find the western entrance of the passage to the Atlantic Ocean

he sailed northward with two ships to about the southern tip of (Vancouver Island)

he reported sailing around a high pillar of rock (Cape Flattery)

he entered an inlet: **“There finding that the land tended north and northeast, with a broad inlet of sea... he entered thereinto, sayling therein more than twentie dayes, and found that land trending still sometimes northwest and northeast and north, and also east and southeastward, and very much broader sea than was at the said entrance (Strait of Georgia), and that he passed by divers ilands in the sayling. And that at the entrance of this said Strait there is on the northwest coast thereof a great hedland or iland with an exceeding high pinnacle or spired rocke, like a piller thereupon.”**⁴⁹

Juan de Fuca left the impression he discovered the Strait of Anian (“Northwest Passage”)

DRAKE DIED WITHOUT EXPLAINING THE EXTENT OF HIS EXPLORATION

Knowledge of the full extent of Sir Francis Drake's expeditions

appears to have died with him -- 1596

second hand accounts of his exploits vary greatly

copies of his maps were purposefully distorted to confuse the Spanish

Many bits of information that he provided make no sense in the light of history:

- on the voyage north, Drake was turned back by cold weather

in summer this would describe conditions in Southeast Alaska and not California;

- accounts of the “Port New Albion” describe Indians

living in “earth lodges” located partly underground

these houses were used by Salish Indians of the Northwest -- not California Indians

- Drake's crew described a small animal with “the taile of a rat”

which provided furs and food for the local Indians

this could very well be the muskrat which lives in the Northwest and not California

Bits of evidence suggest European contact with the Pacific Northwest coast was made

before the well-documented arrival of English Captain James Cook [1776-1780]:

- Nootka Indians on Vancouver Island said that English Captain James Cook

was not the first white man in Nootka Indian territory;

⁴⁹ W. Storrs Lee, *Washington State*, P. 3.

- an English coin dated about [1560] was found
sixty miles from (Whale Cove, Oregon);
 - an English sword with a brass hilt was found in an Indian grave (but was later lost);
 - scraps of metal were found at the Ozette dig on the Washington coast [1969-1970]
- a seventeen-page unsigned narrative known as the “Anonymous Narrative”
has Drake sailing to 48° North
(just south of today’s Cape Flattery and the Strait of Juan de Fuca)
there is speculation the original latitude was 53° North
and the number was changed to maintain secrecy

INTERNATIONAL LAW ESTABLISHES CLAIMS FOR NEW DISCOVERIES

According to the international laws of the time there were three possible claims to new land:

- First was the claim of “Discovery”
this required a record of the approximate location and immediate environment
of the discovery
a formal act of taking possession in the name of the king must be undertaken;
- Second was the claim of “Exploration”
this required greater detail regarding the immediate surroundings be recorded
including extract resources that were available;
- Third was the claim of “Settlement”
this required establishment of a colony and development of the resources
personnel to protect the claim were to permanently located at the site
with each succeeding claim enforcement became easier to accomplish

FRENCH BECOME INVOLVED IN THE CANADIAN TRADE

French fishermen and their families settled the islands of Saint-Pierre and Miquelon
off the coast of Newfoundland, Acadia (as it was known by the French)

When fishing fleets returned to Europe from “l’Acadie” (Canada)⁵⁰

they also carried beaver pelts

Enterprising French merchants saw the possibility of becoming wealthy by developing trade
white men wanted what Native Americans had in abundance and did not value
independent French merchants traded for beaver pelts

with Indians of the Acadia interior

these French traders secured monopolies in the fur trade from King Henry IV
so long as no rival was available to bid the price up,
the beaver trade was a simple matter

FRENCH FUR TRADE DEVELOPS IN L’ACADIE (CANADA)

While Spain relentlessly exploited Native Americans for their gold and silver

⁵⁰ Locations in parenthesis (Canada) were not known by that name at the time.

France grew interested in the lucrative fur trade and lucrative fishing off the Grand Banks
French King Henry IV appointed Troilus de Mesgouez, marquis de la Roche
to be Lieutenant General of “l’Acadie” (Canada)
de la Roche was granted a monopoly in the fur trade
and settlements in Canada, Newfoundland, and all adjacent lands -- January 12, 1598
Marquis de la Roche selected some forty vagrants and beggars
escaping prison terms or death to make the voyage to “l’Acadie”
accompanied by about ten soldiers
de la Roche’s expedition set out on two ships bound for “Sable Island”
off the coast of Nova Scotia
Marquis de la Roche settled his party on the north coast
where he built living quarters and a storehouse
there he placed provisions, clothes, tools, arms and furniture
Leaving the post under the orders of a commandant, Querbonoyer,
la Roche accompanied the ships to the Newfoundland fisheries
according to a previous agreement
profits from the fishing were to go to the ships’ captains
but the furs exchanged were to be divided, two-thirds being given to the captains
and the remainder to the Marquis de la Roche
As la Ronche set out on his return trip to France -- beginning of September 1598
violent storms prevented the ships from stopping at the island post
he sailed directly to the French coast
(Each spring la Ronche supplied his outpost
deportees got their food from the fish and game available locally
they also cultivated gardens which supplied them with vegetables)

FRENCH INTEREST IN ACADIA (CANADA) INTENSIFIES

Huguenot (French Protestant) ship owner Pierre de Chauvin de Tonnetuit
de Tonnetuit had developed an interest in commercial and maritime enterprises
he was regularly engaged in the fur trade and cod-fishery
of “l’Acadie” (Canada) and Newfoundland
He obtained a ten-year fur trade monopoly in New France from King Henry IV
similar to Lieutenant General Marquis de la Roche -- November 22, 1599
while only **“one of the lieutenants”**⁵¹ of the Lieutenant General of l’Acadie
de Tonnetuit received fishing rights from the Gulf of St. Lawrence
to the Saguenay River
Pierre de Chauvin de Tonnetuit began preparations
for a voyage to colonize l’Acadie

⁵¹ Daniel Boorstin, *The Discoverers*, P. 128

1600-1699

DE TONNETUIT LEADS A FOUR-SHIP EXPEDITION TO L'ACADIE (CANADA)

With a grant from French King Henry IV to establish a fur-trade monopoly in l'Acadie (Canada) Pierre de Chauvin de Tonnetuit set out with four ships and sixteen colonists from Honfluer, France -- early spring of 1600

St. Malo merchant Francois Grave Pontgrave was employed as de Tonnetuit's partner he was a French navigator and early fur trader and explorer in the New World

St. Malo, France merchant and French naval and military captain Pierre Du Gua de Monts was the son of a wealthy St. Malo merchant family

he also was a French Huguenot (protestant)

de Monts traveled northeastern North America as a passenger with de Tonnetuit

FRENCH ATTEMPT A SETTLEMENT IN NORTH AMERICA

Francois Grave Pontgrave led the effort to build a colony

only because he had been to northern North America several times and knew the natives

Pontgrave convinced the local Indians to trap beavers to be traded with the French (in the area around today's Hudson Bay)

Expedition leader Pierre Chauvin de Tonnetuit against the advice of Pontgrave chose to build a trading post, *Tadoussac*, strategically situated at the junction of the Saguenay and St. Lawrence rivers with a harbor adjacent

this route to the interior had long been a trading place for the Montagnais natives who were the enemies of the Iroquois Indian nation

About 1,000 Algonkin, Etchiman and Montagnais natives descend on Tadoussac each year to trade

Montagnais Indians had been trading with the Europeans for over fifty years

Iroquois Indians harassed the Montagnais over the years

Frenchmen chose to arm the Montagnais against the Iroquois

creating an enemy for the French that would cost them their North American empire

Native Americans were classified as "savages" by the Europeans

on the surface this meant an uncultivated, untamed, barbarous, crude, cruel person who is without civilization

its hidden meaning was that a savage was less than human

and therefore had few, if any, inherent rights

Chauven and Pontgrave returned to France with a cargo of furs -- autumn 1600

leaving sixteen men at Tadoussac

eleven died that winter and the rest went to live with the Native Americans

PACIFIC NORTHWESTS OZETTE INDIAN VILLAGE IS BURIED IN A MUD SLIDE

Makah Indian village of Ozette was located just South of Cape Flattery
on the entrance to the Strait of Juan de Fuca

it was buried by a massive mud slide -- about 1600

(When excavated in the [1970s] a European bead and some brass tacks
were among the items found

it is possible these European items came from Sir Francis Drake's ship
other possibilities seem even more remote

EAST INDIA COMPANY COMES INTO EXISTENCE

"Governor and Company of Merchants of London trading into the East Indies"

East India Company, as it was called, was led by George Clifford, Earl of Cumberland
with 215 partners

this was the first company to issue stock

shares of the company were owned by wealthy merchants and aristocrats

Knights, Burgesses (members of Parliament) and London Aldermen (city leaders)

East India Company was chartered by English Queen Elizabeth -- December 31, 1600

this company had a monopoly on trade with all countries

east of the Cape of Good Hope and west of the Straits of Magellan

anyone trading beyond the Atlantic Ocean in either India or China had to secure a license
from the East Indian Company at a cost between £5,000 and £25,000

East India Company traded mainly in cotton, silk, indigo dye, salt, tea and opium

English government owned no shares and had only indirect control over the company

the company possessed quasi-governmental powers, including

the ability to wage war, imprison and execute convicts, negotiate treaties
and establish colonies

(East India Company eventually came to rule large areas of India

with its own private armies

there it exercised military power and assumed administrative functions for the nation)

FRENCH SUPPLY SHIP FINDS THE COLONY TADOUSSAC IS FAILING

Pierre Chauvin de Tonnetuit sent a supply ship to his colony of Tadoussac

when the ship arrived five of the sixteen colonists were found alive -- 1601

Tadoussac was poorly suited for settlement because of the rugged terrain and poor soil
(after three summers, de Tonnetuit failed to establish a colony)

CANADA AND ACADIA COMPANY IS FORMED BY FRANCE

French merchants had been excluded from the trade monopolies

given to Troilus de Mesgouez, marquis de la Roche and Pierre de Chauvin de Tonnetuit

these merchants put a great deal of pressure King Henry IV
therefore the monopolies were expanded to include other traders -- 1602
Admiral Aymar de Clermont de Chaste was appointed Vice-Admiral of France
by French King Henry IV
Admiral de Chaste was commissioned to colonize New France
and was granted a fur trade monopoly when he agreed to command a four-ship expedition
of sixteen colonists to the Saint Lawrence River -- February 6, 1602
he, like de la Roche and Tonnetuit, would preside over l'Acadie (Canada)
as lieutenant general
de Chaste created the Canada and Acadia Company to conduct trade -- February 6, 1602
Aymar de Clermont de Chaste led the Canada and Acadia Company expedition to l'Acadie
where he served as one of the governor generals
(there he died shortly before this expedition returned to France [1603])

DUTCH EAST INDIA COMPANY IS FOUNDED

Competition among independent trading companies in the Spice Islands
drove the price of spices in (today's Indonesia while driving down the profits in Europe
this led to the creation of Dutch East India Company -- March 20, 1602
which was granted a twenty-one-year monopoly to carry out trade in the Spice Islands
in competition with the English East India Company
Dutch East India Company's charter
empowered the building of forts and maintenance of armies
treaties were concluded with Asian rulers by the company
(Dutch East India Company is often considered to be the first
multinational corporation in the world)

SPAIN NEEDS A PORT ON THE WEST COAST OF NORTH AMERICA

Spain's Manila Trade between Acapulco (Mexico) and the Philippines
connected Asia and the Spice Islands with North America
little space was allotted on the treasure ships for provisions
Manila Trade required Spain to find a safe port on the West coast of North America
they needed to restock provisions for the galleons
for the last leg of the eastward journey to Acapulco
Viceroy of New Spain wanted to avoid English activities in North America
he sent Sebastian Vizcaino and Martin Aguilar
to explore the west coast of North America
this was first effort to do so by the Spanish
since the Cabrillo- Ferrelo expedition [1542]

SPANISH EXPLORERS SEBASTIAN VIZCAINO AND MARTIN AGUILAR SAIL NORTH

Sebastian Vizcaino sailed out of Acapulco, Mexico with three ships -- May 5, 1602
he followed the course taken some sixty years earlier by Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo
and his pilot Bartolome Ferrelo

Vizcaino, who headed an expedition to the north, was an able Spanish officer and sailor
he sailed on the *San Diego* accompanied by Ensign Martin de Aguilar on the *Tres Reyes*
and Toribio Gomez de Corban on the *San Tomas*
this was the best equipped squadron sent off the Pacific coast thus far

FRENCH COLONY ON SABLE ISLAND STRUGGLES TO EXIST

For some unknown reason Troilus de Mesgouez, marquis de la Roche
did not dispatch the annual supply ship to his settlement on Sable Island -- 1602
Complaints from the vagabonds and beggars living on Sable Island reached the French Court
Aymar de Clermont de Chaste as lieutenant general of l'Acadie (Canada) was instructed
to take a commissioner to the settlement to make it into a reliable and suitable colony

SPAIN EXPLORES THE COAST OF CALIFORNIA

Both Vizcaino and de Aguilar spent a year 1602-1603
attempting to accomplish their mission of finding a safe harbor
along the coast of North America
they carefully explored the California coast
they rediscovered and mapped the harbors of Monterey Bay and San Diego Bay
Vizcaino planned to establish a colony at Monterey Bay
to this end he conducted surveys for two forts
Vizcaino named most of the prominent features such as Point Lobos, Carmel Valley,
Santa Catalina Island, Monterey Bay, Sierra Point and Coyote Point
thus removing many of the names
given by Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo- Bartolome Ferrelo expedition [1542-1543]

FRENCH COLONY ON SABLE ISLAND COMES TO AN END

Troilus de Mesgouez, marquis de la Roche's vagabonds and beggars colonizing Sable Island
revolted probably as a result of the lack of food supplies and exasperation
by their long detention in a wilderness -- winter 1602-1603
two settlement leaders were butchered followed by further murders among the colonists
When a ship arrived from France, eleven principal rebels
together with the remaining stock of fur were returned to France
where King Henry IV presented each a cash gift for their animal skins
Marquis de la Roche was indignant that these men were not hanged
for the murders they admitted but rather received a cash award from the king

MARTIN DE AGUILAR BECOMES SEPERATED FROM SEBASTIAN VIZCAINO

Martin de Aguilar became separated from Vizcaino in a storm

Vizcaino's plan to build fortifications at Monterey Bay was dropped

De Aguilar was forced by the storm as far as 43° North latitude

along the coast of (Oregon) -- 1603

returning South Aguilar explored the region between Cape Blanco and the Rogue River

he continued south along the coast of California and came abreast of a **“rapid and**

abundant river, with ash trees, willows, and brambles, and other trees of Castile upon its banks.”⁵²

de Aguilar attempted to enter the river, but because of the strength of current could not
he named the “Rio” (River) “Santa Ynes”

which he believed to be the fabled Strait of Anian because of its strong current
and its East-West direction

with a great number of the crew sick, Martin de Aguilar returned to Acapulco, Mexico

After his report of a great river was given in Acapulco -- 1603

navigators of all nations accepted the existence of the “great river of the West”

MICHAEL LOK CARRIES JUAN DE FUCA'S STORY TO ENGLAND

English trader Michael Lok was excited about the prospect of a “Northwest Passage”

located directly West of England -- if Juan de Fuca's [1596] story was to be believed

Lok traveled to England and published the story

in an effort to arouse the interest of the English government -- 1603

Lok eventually told the story to England's King James I who was not interested

he was occupied at the time attempting to establish colonies

on the East coast of North America

advisors to the King saw two problems with Juan de Fuca's story:

- why was he not royally rewarded for his fabulous find;
- why was there no mention of a Juan de Fuca in Spanish naval records

WEST COAST OF NORTH AMERICA IS IGNORED BY EUROPE

European nations were involved in trading activities for almost the next one hundred years

Spain, the most powerful country at that time, was occupied with settling and plundering

Florida, Central and South America and maintaining her trade with the Philippines

England was actively establishing colonies on east coast of North America

and attempting to establish the fur trade in northern North America

and cod fishing along Newfoundland's Grand Banks

France was busy establishing an empire in North America

centered on the fur trade and fishing

(Russia was the first country to demonstrate an interest

in the Pacific coast of North America)

⁵² Lyman, William Denison. *The Columbia River*. P. 44-45.

FRENCH EXPLORER SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN EXPLORES THE NEW WORLD

Samuel de Champlain was employed as a geographer

by Governor General Admiral Aymar de Clermont de Chaste

who had been given a fur trading patent in North America by French King Henry IV

Champlain sailed from Honfleur, France -- March 15, 1603

on the first of eleven voyages to the East coast of the New World

Champlain was accompanied by St. Malo merchant Francois Grave Pontgrave

they successfully explored the St. Lawrence River as far as La Chine Rapids -- 1603

Champlain reached Tadoussac, a trading station for fish and furs on the St. Lawrence River

before returning to France to give his report

ADDITIONAL COPIES OF SIR FRANCIS DRAKE'S MAPS SURFACE

These maps have interesting details:

- Molyneux Globe was produced -- 1603

it contained remarkable proof of Drake's secret voyage:

it appeared to show the straits separating (Vancouver Island) from the mainland

- what is known as "Francis Drake Map" by Nicola van Sype

was engraved in the [17th Century]

it appeared to rely on information provided by Drake and showed a chain of islands

along the coast (between today's San Francisco and Oregon)

where no islands exist -- these may in fact be the island chain

north of (Cape Flattery in the state of Washington and Canada)

- another map in the (mid-17th century) may show landmarks along the coast:

(Cape Flattery, Grays Harbor, the Columbia River and Vancouver Island)

- Spanish map attributed to one of Drake's crew

may be the first to depict California as an island

southern tip of the island is the Mexican Baja Peninsula

northern end looks like the (Olympic Peninsula of Washington)

Some historians believe Drake did not stop his northward journey at California⁵³

but rather continued on to the Pacific Northwest

"Port New Albion" might have been far north of Drake's Bay (San Francisco)

it has been speculated by amateur historians that Francis Drake sailed as far north

as the Stikine River (Drake's "River of the Straits") in Southeast Alaska

then south to (the Georgia Strait and Puget Sound)

three locations seem to fit drawings and notations made by Drake

(Drakes Bay [San Francisco], Nehalem Bay [south of Cannon Beach, Oregon]

and Whale Cove [near Depot Bay, Oregon] -- the best match to the drawings)

⁵³ from an article in the Seattle Times by Ross Anderson Sunday, August 27, 2000 based on interviews with amateur historians Dick Johnson, Bob Ward and Samuel Bawlf.

nonetheless, New Albion appeared on maps for centuries off the California coast

PIERRE DU GUA DE MONTS RECEIVES EXCLUSIVE RIGHT TO COLONIZE L'ACADIE

With the death of Lieutenant General Aymar de Clermont de Chaste -- 1603

Pierre Du Gua de Monts formed a joint stock company and began selling shares
to the merchants of Rouen, Saint Malo, La Rochelle and Saint Jean De Luz
all major ports of France

De Monts secured a trade monopoly Newfoundland for ten years from French King Henry IV
which gave him control of fur the market from the St. Lawrence
in return de Monts promised settle 100 new colonists, including convicts, in the region
each year

Pierre Du Gua de Monts' official title was Lieutenant General of l'Acadie (Canada)
as such he would be in charge of establishing and enforcing the laws of the French Court.
however, the French government had no control over the natives
who government themselves

French could control only the trade conducted at the French trading posts
native people traded whenever, and with whomever they chose

De Monts posted notices in all the ports in France forbidding anyone to trade in l'Acadie
in his capacity as an officer of the court, he would be able to punish any offenders
but enforcement of these restrictions could take place only in France

PIERRE DU GUA DE MONTS BEGIN TRADING IN L'ACADIE (CANADA)

Pierre Du Gua de Monts outfitted two ships to sail from France to l'Acadie -- 1603
he called on his old friend Francois Grave Pontgrave to command one ship
ship carpenter with little navigation experience Sieur De Champdore captained the other
Another nobleman, Jean De Biencourt, Baron de Poutrincourt, who had invested heavily
joined the expedition probably to see firsthand where his money was going
Poutrincourt was a military leader -- he was put in charge of securing and training
a small army for the security of the prospective trading post

EXPLORER SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN'S ESTABLISHED A COLONY AT ST. CROIX

On his second trip to l'Acadie (Canada) for France

Champlain sailed under lieutenant general for Acadia Pierre Du Gua de Monts's authority
this was an expedition of seventy-four settlers to establish a colony
in (today's Canada) -- early June, 1604-[1606]

St. Lawrence River (Quebec) was rejected as a possible French colony site
because of the great number of free traders who refused to yield to a French monopoly
these traders were already well established along the St. Lawrence River
they were independent trappers and traders
known as "coureurs des bois" (runners of the woods) by the French

or “bush-lopers” as they would be called by the English
they adopted native habits and lived with the Indians so long
that they became indistinguishable from the natives
skilled canoe paddlers known as “voyageurs” were hired to paddle huge canoes
wherever their employers wished to go

Champlain established a colony at the mouth of the St. Croix River
on Saint Croix Island -- June 1604

“St. Croix Island” outpost was one of the first attempts by France
at year-round colonization in l’Acadie

earlier attempts by Jaques Cartier at Charlesbourg-Royal [1541]

Tadoussac [1600] and Sable Island [1598] had all failed

French missionaries, both Catholic and Huguenots, flooded the New World

King of France paid young women to move to the colonies to marry male colonists there

this became the first successful settlement in l’Acadie (Canada)

people with dreams of a new life became colonists and merchants

others with a thirst for adventure became explorers, coureurs des bois and voyageurs

FRENCH COLONY ON ST. CROIX ISLAND IS MOVED

During the winter more than half the settlers left on St. Croix Island by Champlain
had perished due to a “land-sickness” (perhaps scurvy)

In the meantime, Champlain had discovered a new location better suited for a settlement

French Lieutenant General for Acadia Pierre Du Gua de Monts

and Samuel de Champlain moved their settlement to a new location

on the southern shore of the Bay of Fundy

it became known as the Habitation at Port-Royal -- spring 1605

(now Annapolis Royal, Nova Scotia)

Habitation at Port-Royal was France’s first permanent settlement in North America

it served as the capital of l’Acadie

until it was destroyed by British military forces in [1613]

KING JAMES CHARTERS THE VIRGINIA COMPANY OF LONDON

Virginia Company of London (sometimes London Company) was a joint stock company
created by England’s King James to establish settlements on North America

(in today’s Massachusetts)

Virginia Company sent a three-ship expedition: *Susan Constant*, *Godspeed* and *Discovery*

led by English privateer Captain Christopher Newport with thirty-nine crewmen

105 men and boys left Blackwall, England -- December 1606

there were no women on the first ships

ENGLISH MERCHANTS HIRE HENRY HUDSON TO FIND THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE

English merchants were competing with the Dutch East India Company
England's Muscovy Company hired Henry Hudson to sail across the Arctic Circle to China
it was hoped the summer sun would melt the polar ice and present a safe passage
Hudson sailed the eighty-ton *Hopewell* with a crew of ten men
and a ship's boy, his son John -- May 1, 1607
(*Hopewell* reached the vicinity of 80° north before encountering pack ice [July 1607]
he was forced to sail south and return to England)

ENGLISH ESTABLISH THEIR FIRST SUCCESSFUL COLONY ON NORTH AMERICA

After an unusually lengthy trip sailing across the Atlantic Ocean from England
colonists arrived on the James River at the southern edge of the mouth
(of today's Chesapeake Bay) -- May 14, 1607
Virginia Company established the Jamestown Settlement
Jamestown Island in the James River about forty miles inland from Chesapeake Bay
was selected for the colony of Jamestown (named after England's King James)
Virginia Company had advised them to find a location with deep water anchorage
that could be easily defended from European nations also establishing colonies
Colonists came ashore the next day and work began on the settlement
they quickly set about constructing their initial fort
within a month James Fort covered an acre on Jamestown Island
(although it burned down the following year)
wooden palisade walls formed a triangle around a storehouse, church and houses
Initially, the colony was governed by a council of seven -- one member served as president
serious problems soon emerged in the small English outpost
Algonquian-speaking Indians led by Chief Powhatan
conducted some trade with the new arrivals -- but relations were strained
many of the original colonists were upper-class Englishmen
not familiar with manual labor
Jamestown lacked sufficient laborers and skilled farmers
unfamiliar climate, as well as brackish (salty) water and lack of food
led to disease and death

HUDSON MAKES A SECOND ATTEMPT TO FIND THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE

Henry Hudson again sought the fabled Northwest Passage to China
again employed by England's Muscovy Company this time he sailed north to Russia
aboard the *Hopewell* with fourteen men and his son John -- April 22, 1608
Hudson traveled almost 2,500 miles-- well above the Arctic Circle (July 1608)
but even in summer the ice was impenetrable
Hudson decided to sail to North America in search of the Northwest Passage to China
after weeks of rain the was near mutiny so Hudson returned to England

Muscovy Company officers were not pleased

EXPLORER SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN MAKES HIS THIRD VOYAGE TO L'ACADIE

Frenchman Pierre de Guast, Sieur de Monts dispatched Samuel de Champlain and Francois du Pontgrave to l'Acadie (Canada)

Champlain made his third voyage to the New World – (April 13, 1608)- [1609]

this time in search of a location for a French trading post

and to serve as the beginning point in the search for the elusive route to China

Champlain, acting as lieutenant for Pierre de Guast, Sieur de Monts, began construction

on a wooden French trading fort (still in existence) that was protected by towering cliffs

overlooking where the St. Lawrence River narrows -- July 3, 1608

Twenty-eight people moved into "l'Habitation" (later Quebec City) -- July 8

(twenty of the twenty-eight colonists died the first winter)

Champlain established friendly relations with natives living in the area:

- Algonquin Indians of the lower St. Lawrence River region
- Hurons and Algonquins of the Ottawa River area

LIEUTENANT GENERAL FOR L' ACADIE LOSES HIS FUR TRADE MONOLOGY

French Lieutenant General for Acadia Pierre Du Gua de Monts' monopoly

was not renewed -- end of 1608

partly because of the lack of success in establishing a series of colonies

Fur trade was now thrown open to everyone

nevertheless, de Monts and his partners decided to continue their trading operations

faced with the loss French financial support,

de Monts temporarily turned to the English for support

de Monts' operation in l'Acadie (Canada) were divided:

- Samuel de Champlain continued to explore and have charge of Quebec City;
- Francois Grave Pontgrave took charge of the fur trade

(Samuel de Champlain ended his third expedition by exploring up (today's Richelieu River)

and discovering Lake Champlain [July 30, 1609])

HENRY HUDSON'S THIRD VOYAGE TO FIND THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE

English merchants of the Muscovy Company were unhappy with Henry Hudson

so he turned to the Dutch for financial support

Dutch East India Company commissioned him to find a water passage to Asia

as he made preparations for a third voyage, he received a package

from his friend and famous Jamestown Settler, Captain John Smith

stating the belief that a passage to the West lay to the North through America

He departed from Amsterdam, Netherlands on the eighty-ton *Half Moon* -- April 4, 1609

Dutch East India Company provided the ship and a crew of eighteen

most were Dutch but a few were Englishmen
he was again blocked by pack ice near Russia
Ignoring his order from the Dutch East India Company he turned toward North America
to attempt to find the fabled Northwest Passage to China
Hudson crossed the Atlantic Ocean
he reached the Grand Banks south of Newfoundland where they encountered Indians
Half Moon stayed for ten days in the area to repair a broken mast and fish for food
twelve of the ship's crew carrying muskets and a small cannon
went ashore and assaulted the village near their anchorage
Indians were driven from their settlement -- their boats and possessions taken
Half Moon turned south along the Atlantic coast of North America
Hudson named "New Holland (Cape Cod) and discovered (Delaware Bay)
failing to enter Chesapeake Bay because of high wind
they reached the vicinity of Jamestown before returning north
Sailing north Hudson entered a river (Hudson River) he hoped would take him to China
he entered and noticed that the lush lands that lined the river contained abundant wildlife
he and his crew also met with some of the Native Americans living on the river bank
Hudson reached upriver as far as (today's Albany, New York)
before leaving North America
Hudson sailed the *Half Moon* back to Europe docking in Dartmouth, England
England, who had poor relations with Holland seized his ship
as were the English members of his crew
after his release Hudson was forbidden from working with the Dutch again
Hudson's explorations provided the foundation for Dutch claims to the Eastern seaboard

HENRY HUDSON'S FINAL VOYAGE

Henry Hudson managed to get backing for another voyage,
this time from the Virginia Company and the English East India Company
Hudson set out on his fourth journey from England -- April 17, 1610
aboard the fifty-five-ton *Discovery*
with twenty-three men and two ship's boys including his son John
weather was foul and the seas icy as the *Discovery* made its way through an icy passage
(known today as Hudson Strait)
he sighted a huge body of water that he mistakenly assumed was the Pacific Ocean
(later it would be named Hudson Bay)
Hudson spent the following months mapping and exploring its eastern shores
but he and his crew did not find a passage to Asia
While exploring the gigantic bay the water became very icy
Discovery was frozen in ice -- November 1610
with dwindling food supplies, Hudson's crew grew increasingly angry, ill and fearful

HENRY HUDSON'S CREWMEN MUTINY

After spending a desperate and long winter trapped in ice on (today's Hudson Bay) mutiny was on the mind of the crewmembers

When the *Discovery* was freed by melting ice conditions improved enough for the *Discovery* to set sail once again -- spring 1611

Hudson decided to continue sailing westward in search of a Northwest Passage Hudson's crew mutinied and set Hudson, his teenage son John, and seven crewmen who were either sick or loyal to Hudson adrift in an open boat marooning them in Hudson Bay -- June 1611

Discovery sailed away leaving those who were stranded never to be heard from again only a handful of the sailors made it back to England aboard the *Discovery* these mutineers were later put on trial, but were not punished for the mutiny

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN CONTINUES HIS EXPLORATIONS FOR FRANCE

Samuel de Champlain, the founder of Quebec and the discoverer of Lake Champlain, was granted a monopoly by French government to establish the fur trade -- 1612 on condition he push exploration westward shares in his company were divided

among the merchants of Saint Malo and Rouen, France

Champlain served as Governor of New France in every way except the title which was probably deigned him because he was not of noble birth however, Pierre Du Gua de Monts and Francois Grave Pontgrave competed with Champlain and each other for trade with the Indians

EARLY ENGLISH ATTACKS ON FRENCH SETTLEMENTS IN CANADA

Lieutenant General Pierre Du Gua de Monts had expanded his Port-Royal settlement on the Bay of Fundy

two fur trading and fishing stations were set up on the west bank -- by 1613

Both of the French settlements on either side of the Bay of Fundy

were totally destroyed in a raid conducted by English Captain Samuel Argall -- 1613

THIRTY YEARS' WAR SWEEPS ACROSS EUROPE

Thirty Years' War was a series of wars involving most of the countries of Europe principally fought in Central Europe -- 1618-[1648]

it was one of the longest and most destructive conflicts in European history

Thirty Years' War took place largely as a religious war between Catholics and Protestants although disputes over internal politics and the balance of power within the Empire also played a significant part

Among the great traumas caused by the war was a major outbreak of witchcraft persecutions

that took place in Germany following the first phase of the Thirty Years' War
residents of Germany had been devastated not only by the conflict itself,
but also by various crop failures, famines and plagues
they were quick to blame these calamities on supernatural causes
allegations of witchcraft against fellow citizens flourished
900 men, women and children were burned at the stake in Germany [1630]
Thirty Years' War rearranged the power structure of Europe
Spain grew steadily weaker
she was forced to accept the independence of the Dutch Republic
France became increasingly powerful -- much to the concern of England

PILGRIMS COME TO NORTH AMERICA

While Protestants protested aspects of the Roman Catholic Church,
radical Protestants protested aspects of the Protestant Church of England
one of these groups became known as "Separatists"
because they desired to separate from the Church of England
whose church rituals they believed were too Catholic
they practiced a religion independent of the dominate church's traditions
and organizations
Separatists moved to Holland which was more liberal in its religious tolerance than England
soon all connection with the Church of England was severed
Some of the Separatists living in Holland decided to establish a colony on North America
where they would be free to practice their independent religion
they applied for a charter from the England's Virginia Company to establish a colony
it was decided the younger and stronger members would depart first
these colonists became known as "Pilgrims" (travelers)
Two ships were prepared for the Atlantic Ocean crossing
sixty-ton *Speedwell* sailed from Holland to England
to meet its sister ship, the 180-ton *Mayflower*
however, the *Speedwell* proved not to be seaworthy
Mayflower set sail from Plymouth, England under Captain Christopher Jones
with thirty-five sailors and 102 Separatist Pilgrims -- September 16, 1620
seventy-three men (nineteen were servants) and twenty-nine women (three servants)
only about twenty-eight Pilgrims were members of the Separatist congregation
they called themselves "the Saints"
others, "the Strangers," were members of the crew of the *Mayflower*,
paying passengers and craftsmen needed to construct the colony
Pilgrims' charter to establish a colony had not been completed when they sailed
Storms hit the *Mayflower* which was blown off course
after a dreadful sixty-five-day crossing land was sighted -- November 9, 1620

two days were spent investigating their location -- this was not Virginia
they were not where their charter, when it became finalized, was legal
In an effort to keep the members of the colony working together a meeting was held
some Pilgrims felt because they had no charter and this was not Virginia
they were free to do as they chose
many of the other colonists chose to establish a government and drafted an agreement
most adult men, but not the crew or servants or women,
signed the "Mayflower Compact" aboard ship -- November 11, 1620
when disputes arose the resolution would be decided by a vote of the majority
London merchant John Carver was elected governor of Plymouth colony
Peregrine (meaning one who journeys to foreign lands) White
son of Susanna and William White was born -- November 20, 1620
as the Pilgrims remained on the *Mayflower* deciding where to settle
he was the first English child born to the Pilgrims in the New World
Exploring the area they found themselves in was delayed
because the small boat they brought had been partially dismantled
and placed in the ship's hold -- it was damaged during the crossing
Pilgrims did not land until -- December 21, 1620
Soon after the landing was complete, Peregrine White's father died and his mother remarried
her marriage to Edward Winslow was the first wedding in the New World
Winslow later adopted Peregrine and made him an heir

COMPANY DE CAEN IS ORGANIZED BY FRENCH KING LOUIS XIII

Lieutenant General Pierre Du Gua de Monts' and Samuel de Champlain's Company
did not take their responsibilities seriously
only one family had been sent to Canada to settle
its monopoly was abolished by King Louis XIII
Champlain returned to France -- 1620

ANOTHER FRENCH TRADING COMPANY IS CHARTERED IN L'ACADIE (CANADA)

French King Louis XIII granted a New Charter
for fur trading operations in l'Acadie (Canada)
Pierre Du Gua de Monts trading operation and Samuel de Champlain's Company
were merged into a new enterprise -- Company of De Caen
under the control of two French merchants from the city of Rouen
William De Caen and his nephew -- 1622
Company of De Caen prohibited settlers of New France from trading with the Indians
this ended a one-hundred-year tradition of free trade between Indians and Europeans
and stopped ten thousand years of free trade tradition among the natives
control of the trade by the Company of De Caen

was designed to give power and authority to a few selected people
it perpetuated poor leadership
it also discourages innovation and adaptation
Liquor was brought from France by the Company of De Caen in large barrels
but for overland travel in l'Acadie (Canada) liquor, mainly brandy,
was divided into small kegs
when it was traded with the natives it was diluted with water to acquire more furs
Indians learned that good liquor would flame up when poured on a fire
but when diluted it would put the fire out
thus good liquor was identified as "fire water"

FRENCH GOVERNMENT DEVELOPS THE POSITION OF PRIME MINISTER

(French nobleman Armand Jean de Plessis de Richelieu
was consecrated as a Catholic bishop [1608]
Bishop Richelieu entered politics and became Secretary of State of France [1616]
Richelieu became a Catholic Cardinal consolidating his political and clerical powers -- 1622
Cardinal Richelieu is considered to be the world's first Prime Minister
he transformed France into a strong, centralized state
Cardinal Richelieu believed that colonies existed to enrich the mother country
by exporting raw materials and by importing finished manufactured products

JUAN DE FUCA'S STORY IS DISTRIBUTED ON A WIDE SCALE

Apostolos Valerianos' (Juan de Fuca) report to Michael Lok became part of Samuel Purchas' famous book of fact and fiction: *Purchas, His Pilgrimes* -- published 1625
Vol. III. Page 849 states, in substance: In the year [1592], the Viceroy of Mexico sent a pilot, named Juan de Fuca, on a voyage of discovery to the northwest. De Fuca followed the coast **"untill he came to the Latitude of fortie seven degrees, and that there finding that the land trended North and North-east, with a broad Inlet of sea, betweene 47, and 48, degrees of Latitude; hee entered thereinto, sayling therein more than twenty dayes, and found that Land trending sometime North-west and North-east, and North, and also East and South-eastward, and very much broader Sea then was at the said entrance, and that he passed by divers lands in the sayling."**⁵⁴

Other parts of the account of his voyage also seem correct

he noted there was an **"...exceedingly high pinnacle or spired rock like a pillar thereupon" at the entrance of the strait**⁵⁵ -- it is true a great strait lies not far beyond 47°

This raises several questions regarding Sir Frances Drake's [1577-1578] voyage:

- how did what seemed to be the Strait of Juan de Fuca appear on maps
twenty years before the water passage was discovered by a Spanish sailor?

⁵⁴ Hayes, Derek, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest*, P. 16.

⁵⁵ Hayes, Derek, *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and the Pacific Northwest*, P. 16.

- why was California portrayed for more than a century as an island?
- was (today's British Columbia and Washington State) mapped in 1580]?
- why did the English search for 200 years for a Northwest Passage that did not exist?

KING OF FRANCE CHARTERS A NEW TRADING COMPANY

Cardinal Armand Jean de Plessis de Richelieu created the Company of New France
(also known as the One Hundred Associates)

he recruited a hundred French Roman Catholic men of wealth and affluence
as partners in his new enterprise

Cardinal Richelieu's Company of New France was not owned by small town merchants
its principal stockholders were Parisians

All previous grants and monopolies were cancelled -- April 25, 1627

Cardinal Richelieu became absolute master of l'Acadie (New France now Canada)

his Company of New France was given authority over North America
from Florida to the Arctic Circle,

from Newfoundland to Lake Huron forever -- April 25, 1627

Company of New France was granted a permanent monopoly over the fur trade
and a monopoly for fifteen years all other trade except cod fishing and whale fishing
which remained open to all French subjects

all merchandise to or from New France was to be free of duty for fifteen years

Company of New France was free to distribute lands

this company reproduced the feudal conditions then existing in France

it lavishly bestowed huge tracts of land on personal favorites and Catholic Church leaders

enormous tracts of land were granted to Seigneurs (private land owners)

until all of the individual estates combined totaled 5,888,716 acres⁵⁶

an additional 2,096,754 acres⁵⁷ were granted to the Catholic Church in the 1600s

Catholic clergy and its orders accumulated great wealth from rents and tithes
or by borrowing from church members at absurdly low interest rates

COMPANY OF NEW FRANCE BEGINS OPERATION

Only Roman Catholics were allowed to join Cardinal Richelieu's Company of New France
no Huguenot (French protestant) or foreigner was allowed into New France

Company of New France depended to a large extent on individual or itinerant traders

who roamed afar among the Indian tribes and brought back their bales of pelts and furs
inhabitants already there who were not part of the Company

were free to barter with the Indians on the condition they must sell their furs
to the Company at a fixed price

Native Americans were easily persuaded to exchange furs for trivial trinkets

⁵⁶ Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth*, Vol. I., P. 23.

⁵⁷ Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth*, Vol. I., P. 16

and the art of persuasion was assisted by gratuities of liquor
No one could trade with natives without an annual license from the Company of New France
French officials were free to cancel these licenses any time they wanted
Indians who became Catholic were acknowledged to be French citizens

NORTH AMERICAN FUR TRADE PROVIDES VAST WEALTH TO EUROPE

While European monopolies dominated the fur trade, company charters also required annual payment to the national government and to finance military expenditures
Vast wealth in the fur trade created enforcement problems for the monopoly in New France
unlicensed independent traders, *coureurs de bois* (or “runners of the woods”),
began to do business in the late 17th and early 18th centuries
French traders did not develop any system and made no permanent establishments
as a result New France developed a unique class structure:

- at the top were the Catholic clergy;
- next came the nobility;
- third were the members of the judiciary;
- last were the common people;
- Native Americans did not rate on the scale at all

Company of New France held its monopoly until [1663]

FUR TRADING IN NORTH AMERICA EXPANDS

Company of New France led the transition from a seasonal coastal fur trade
into a permanent interior fur trade

Fur trade became one of the main economic ventures in North America attracting Europeans
French, British, Dutch, Spanish and Russians competed for vast amounts of beaver pelts

Beavers are an intelligent animal which feed on tree bark and twigs

they are defenseless on land

beavers cut down trees and chew off the branches with their sharp front teeth

they drag the limbs into the stream or dig canals to float the branches into the stream

they possess amazing skill at building dams across streams to generate a flood

they live in the lake behind the dam

that surrounds their lodge with water for protection

beaver dams may be straight if the current is slow or curved if the current is swift

they plug holes in the dam with twigs or stones plastered with mud

Fur trappers would break a hole in the dam and place a trap in the hole

when the beaver attempted repairs it was trapped and drowned

(so many beaver were killed they almost became extinct

and have been completely eliminated from some areas)

FUR TRADE BRINGS VAST CHANGES TO NATIVE AMERICANS

Fur trade brought profound changes to the indigenous people living along the St. Lawrence River
European goods, such as iron axe heads, brass kettles, cloth, and firearms were bought with beaver pelts and other furs
Destruction of beaver populations along the St. Lawrence heightened the fierce competition between the Iroquois and Huron Indians for access to rich fur-bearing lands
Metis (descendants of French trappers and native women) entered the independent trade where personal contacts and experience in the fur trade were important and gave an edge to independent traders over the more bureaucratic monopolies
many Indian societies across the continent came to depend on the fur trade as their primary source of income
Even more significantly, new infectious diseases brought by the French decimated natives
disease combined with warfare led to the near destruction of the Huron natives [by 1650]

WAR BETWEEN CATHOLICS AND PROTESTANTS SWEEPS ACROSS EUROPE

Anglo-French War was part of Europe Thirty Year's War -- 1627-[1629]
most of the fighting took place at sea but some fighting took place in l'Acadie (Canada)
Gervase (Jarvis) Kirke, was a wealthy London-based merchant who formed the Company of Adventurers to Canada -- 1627
commissioned by King Charles of England to drive the French from Canada
Gervase Kirke's son, David Kirke, set off with three ships
they sailed the Saint Lawrence River to the French trading post Tadoussac
David Kirke seized one supply ship going to Quebec -- 1628
then demanded Samuel de Champlain surrender Quebec -- Champlain refused
Kirke decided against an attack on Quebec and returned to England
en route he encountered the French supply fleet bound for Quebec and defeated it
Colonists at Quebec were left waiting for the arrival of badly needed provisions
Kirke and his mercenaries were well aware of the dire situation of the French colonists
they pledged to return to seize Quebec the following year
Champlain realized that the settlement was in great danger

MASSACHUSETTS BAY COMPANY IS CHARTERED BY THE KING OF ENGLAND

England's King Charles was considerably less tolerant than his father, King James had been
Charles dissolved Parliament (the English government) several times [1625-1640]
Charles was suspicious of the Puritans
these Protestant protestors wanted to "purify" the Church of England
Charles' persecution of Puritans led them to decide to seek a new life in the New World
Several distinguished Puritan businessmen, including attorney John Winthrop, formed a venture called the "Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay"
(Massachusetts Bay Company)

this company received a land grant from the Council of New England
(successor to the ineffective Virginia Company) --1628
soldier and local legal official John Endecott (sometimes Endicott)
was given the task of establishing a colony in what was called Massachusetts Bay

ENGLISH PURITANS ARRIVE IN NORTH AMERICA

John Endecott, his wife and a small group of settlers sailed from England
on the *Abigail* -- June 20, 1628

they arrived at Massachusetts Bay -- September 1628
this was not the first group of Protestants to travel to the New World
Pilgrims had first made the journey eight years earlier
they had established several colonies

One of the Pilgrim colonies was located
where the Massachusetts Bay Company wanted their colony
after some discussion, the earlier settlers
amicably accepted the authority of John Endecott
in celebration this expanded colony was renamed Salem -- Hebrew for peaceful
John Endecott served as the first governor of the Salem settlement

MORE PURITANS ARRIVE IN MASSUSECHETTS BAY COLONY

Massachusetts Bay Company leader John Winthrop organized a fleet of eleven ships
to transport 700 Puritans from England to join John Endecott in Salem -- April 1630
John Winthrop became the governor of the new, much larger, Massachusetts Bay Colony
he chose the area of Boston to establish his capital

Thomas Dudley was elected deputy governor

Massachusetts Bay Colony was virtually independent of England

territory they administered included portions of (today's Massachusetts, Maine,
New Hampshire, Rhode Island and Connecticut)

Puritans effectively created a theocracy

(a government run by religious officials to enforce religious principles)

although its governors were elected, the voters were limited to male church members
who owned land

as a result colonial leadership exhibited intolerance to other religious views

(For the next ten years there was a steady exodus of Puritans from England

about 10,000 people migrated to Massachusetts Bay and neighboring colonies

many ministers reacting to newly repressive religious policies of England

made the trip with their flocks John Cotton, Roger Williams, Thomas Hooker
and others became leaders of Puritan congregations)

Religious divisions within Massachusetts Bay Colony and the need for additional land
prompted a number of Puritans to migrate from Massachusetts Bay Colony

these migrations resulted in the creation of Connecticut Colony led by Hooker
Rhode Island and Providence Plantations were founded
(led by Williams and exiled Puritan Anne Hutchinson)
John Wheelwright, like Anne Hutchinson, was banished from Massachusetts Bay,
led his congregation north to found Exeter, New Hampshire
Region of (today's New England) was dominated by the Puritan church
and its government officials

SECOND FRENCH SETTLEMENT IS FOUNDED IN NEW FRANCE

After Quebec City [1608] a tiny French trading post on the St. Lawrence River
was ordered constructed by Governor of New France Samuel de Champlain -- 1634
this became Trois-Rivieres (Three Rivers)
the second permanent settlement in New France
Three Rivers' fort enclosed a few homes and shops which would become very active
in the fur trade

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN, GOVERNOR OF NEW FRANCE, DIES

Samuel de Champlain, navigator, cartographer, soldier, explorer, Quebec City founder,
historian, Company of New France Governor and Governor of New France
died -- December 25, 1635
he became known simply as the "Father of New France"

PIERRE ESPIRIT RADISSON IS CAPTURED BY IROQUOIS INDIANS

Born in Saint Malo, France about 1636 Pierre Espirit Raddison
arrived in New France (Canada) at age fifteen – 1651
he settled at the frontier trading post of Three Rivers on St. Lawrence River
Radisson was captured by Iroquois Indians the next year -- 1652
he appeared to be adopted into the tribe, but in actuality he remained a captive
Radisson and another captive were hunting with three tribesmen – early 1654
they murdered the Indians while they slept⁵⁸
they both fled toward the nearest settlement -- the outpost at Three Rivers
near the village they were recaptured, tortured and returned to captivity
Radisson set out to prove to his captors that he had converted to the native way of life
he recorded in his journal that he practiced the worst kind of barbarism
Radisson finally made good his escape to a Dutch post
reaching Fort Orange (Albany, New York) --1654
Radisson returned to Europe where he traveled to Amsterdam and La Rochelle, France

FRENCH FUR TRAPPER TRADE IN THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER REGION

⁵⁸ William Henry Johnson. *French Pathfinders in North America*, P. 196.

Pierre Esprit Raddison returned from Europe to Three Rivers on St. Lawrence River
journeying with his brother-in-law Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers
they explored and traded in the upper Mississippi River region --1656
where they bought furs from the Algonquin Indians
Radisson and des Grosseilliers reached the confluence of the Mississippi and Missouri rivers
they were the first Europeans to see the Mississippi River
although its significance escaped them --1657

A FORTUNE IN FURS IS DELIVERED TO MONTREAL

Pierre Esprit Raddison and his brother-in-law Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers
wintered in Sioux country on the southwest shore of Lake Superior -- 1659-1660
they were the first white men to enter the region (that is now Minnesota)
Radisson and des Grosseilliers returned to the east with a rich cargo of several thousand pelts
carried by a convoy of 100 canoes paddled by 300 men
forty canoes turned back -- sixty made it through
of these a quarter were left in Montreal with the remainder taken to Three Rivers
When Radisson and des Grosseilliers reached Quebec City
they were saluted by cannons fire from the fort and three ships in the harbor
after formally recognizing the fur traders' contribution to the economy of the city
they were imprisoned by the French governor for having left without permission
they were heavily fined and their trade goods were confiscated
Radisson and des Grosseilliers told no one what they knew
about the Mississippi/Lake Superior region
they wanted to develop the trade for themselves before telling others
however, the French governor refused to give them permission to leave Quebec City
to return to the frontier
Des Grosseilliers crossed the Atlantic Ocean and returned to France
to seek help from the French government -- but found none
he returned to Quebec City without any prospects
Des Grosseilliers and Radisson traveled to Boston seeking financial support
once again they failed to find support
but they met an Englishman, Colonel George Cartwright,
who took the two men with him to England to be presented to King Charles II

COMPANY OF NEW FRANCE COMES TO AN END

Cardinal Richelieu's Company of New France (or the One Hundred Associates)
had failed to organize the thousands of colonists in America that had been promised
French King Louis XIV disbanded the Company of New France
and created a new political body to reorganize the colonization of New France
"Sovereign Council of New France" was composed of three officers -- 1663

- “Intendant of New France” was responsible for law and order and served as presiding officer of the meetings of the Sovereign Council
- “Governor General of New France” managed military and diplomatic relations
- “Bishop of New France” was responsible for all spiritual matters in New France

RADISSON AND GROSEILLERS SWITCH FROM FRENCH BACKING TO ENGLISH

Pierre Esprit Radisson and his brothers-in-law Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers had not received the consideration from the French government they believed they deserved

They reported to England’s King Charles II’s government that a great area rich in furs lay north of Lake Superior these furs could be reached by way of Hudson Bay

Radisson and Grosseilliers, established a small post, Fort Nelson, on the narrow neck of land that separates the mouth of the Nelson River from the mouth of the Hayes River on southwestern shore of Hudson Bay -- 1663

(shortly thereafter it was taken over by the French and the name was changed to Fort Bourbon

this post will change hands several times in the next ten years)

RADISSON AND GROSEILLERS EXPLORE FOR ENGLAND

Pierre-Esprit Radisson and Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers secured financial backing from an English syndicate

headed by Prince Rupert, the cousin of King Charles II -- 1668

Radisson and Grosseilliers set out for the Mississippi/Lake Superior region traveling by way of Hudson Bay -- June 3, 1668 to [1669]

Groseilliers traveled on the *Nonsuch* and Radisson aboard the *Eaglet* *Eaglet* returned to England when she was caught in a storm

To bypass French controlled areas along the St. Lawrence River

Medard des Grosseilliers led his expedition to (today’s James Bay

(then called Hudson Bay rather than being identified as a bay of its own)

des Grosseilliers reached the mouth of a river he named after their sponsor Prince Rupert

(Rupert River later played a vital role in supplying inland trading posts with regular canoe brigades)

Groseilliers constructed Rupert House (originally called Fort Charles after the English king)

Groseilliers’ expedition spent the winter there -- 1668-1669

trade relations were established with the Indians and the land was formally “purchased”

300 natives came to the post to trade -- spring 1669

When the ice broke in James Bay precious furs were loaded on board and *Nonsuch*

des Grosseilliers returned to England where he gave a glowing report of his findings

to Prince Rupert and the government of King Charles II

FRENCH RULES REGARDING THE USE OF LIQUOR IN THE FUR TRADE CHANGE

Sovereign Council of New France eliminated the ban against the trading of alcohol with the Indians which was impossible to enforce -- 1669
this was replaced by a new policy that allowed plying the Indians with liquor but prohibited drunkenness among the Indians

HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY IS ORGANIZED IN ENGLAND

English King Charles II found a way to reward those who aided him in his ascent to the throne
by granting a charter for a company to develop a monopoly over the Indian Trade, especially the fur trade, in (Canada)
“Governor and Company of Adventurers of England Trading into Hudson Bay” (or Hudson’s Bay Company or HBC) was granted a charter -- May 2, 1670 at the time the Hudson’s Bay Company Charter was granted by the King England (Canada) was French territory
Lord Selkirk led seventeen other stockholders including: the King’s cousin Prince Rupert, the Duke of Albemarle, the Earl of Craven, Lord Ashley, the Earl of Shaftesbury, Lord Arlington, General Monk, Sir John Robinson, Sir Charles Vyner, Sir George Carteret, other knights and London merchants

HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY RECEIVES ITS CHARTER

Hudson’s Bay Company had three goals:

- build a lucrative fur trade;
- colonize into the West;
- discover the Northwest Passage to the Pacific Ocean

According the Hudson’s Bay Company Charter:

•the **“Company [is] endowed with exclusive and perpetual monopoly of trade and commerce of all those seas, straits, bays, rivers, lakes, creeks, and sounds, ‘in whatsoever latitude they shall be,’ that lay within the entrance of the Hudson’s Straits ‘together with all the lands, countries, and territories’ adjacent to those waters ‘not now possessed by any of our own subjects or the subjects of any other Christian Prince or State.’”**⁵⁹

•the **“Company was granted possession of the lands, mines, minerals, timber, fisheries, etc., and was vested with the full power of making laws, ordinances, and regulations at pleasure, and of revoking them at pleasure. It could also impose penalties and punishments, ‘provided they are reasonable, and are not repugnant to the laws of ‘England’.”**⁶⁰

- moreover, if necessary the Company could request the assistance

⁵⁹ Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth.*, Vol. I. P. 39.

⁶⁰ Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth.*, Vol. I. P. 39.

of His Majesty's armed forces in the enforcement of the powers granted in the charter
British navy and army were at the command of the Company **"For protection of its trade and territory the Company was empowered to employ an armed force, appoint commanders, erect forts and take other necessary measures."**⁶¹

HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY WAS IN CHARGE OF RUPERT'S LAND (CANADA)

England's King Charles II provided trading privileges for all land drained into Hudson Bay
this region constituted 1.5 million square miles
over one-third the area of (modern day Canada)
and stretched into the north central region of (today's United States)
specific boundaries were unknown at the time
this region became known as "Rupert's Land"
named after Prince Rupert, first director of the company
and a first cousin of King Charles II

Rent was composed of **"two elks and two black beavers whenever and as often as 'His Majesty, and his Majesty and his successors' should enter their (the Company's territories)..."**⁶²

Hudson's Bay Company was the English government for Canada
(rights to govern was not granted to the present Canadian government until [1869])

HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY USED POST SYSTEM

Hudson's Bay Company (HBC) was empowered to stop the French fur trade at its
Port-Royal settlement on Bay of Fundy and its Quebec post on the St. Lawrence River
Hudson's Bay Company factories (trading posts) were built on (James Bay),
a part of Hudson Bay,
(Rupert House, Hudson Bay Company's first factory, had been built on James Bay
by Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers two years before the company
was founded [1668])

Fort Albany was constructed on southern shore of the Albany River-- 1670

Moose Factory was built by Pierre Radisson at the mouth of the Moose River
on the southern end of James Bay [1673]

HBC Employees known as "factors" were assigned to manage trading posts (factories)

HBC never even pretended to send its trappers into the wilderness in search of furs

HBC relied on local natives to do the trapping and bring their catches to them

Indians became dependent on the Company

Hudson's Bay Company made two-way profit:

- cheap trade goods were purchased by the Indians at very prices;
- furs purchased cheaply from the natives were sold in Europe for a very high profit

⁶¹ Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth.*, Vol. I. P. 40.

⁶² Gustavus Myers, *A History of Canadian Wealth.*, Vol. I. P. 41.

Profits consistently were so great, notwithstanding the constant battle against French traders, that Hudson's Bay Company declared dividends of from 25% to 50% annually (eventually profits soared -- governors resorted to "stock watering" so profits would appear less -- still profits climbed to an unbelievable 600% a year HBC became so rich that governors paid little attention to management in North America the company remained a trading company rather than a trapping company Presence of both British and French trading companies in eastern Canada resulted in international cutthroat competition and military strife

ENGLISH EAST INDIA COMPANY OPENS TRADE WITH CHINA

Having overcome opposition from Asian merchants, Portuguese and Dutch traders English East India Company secure a trading post in Taiwan, China --1672 English East India Company was soon engaged in direct and regular trade with the Chinese company merchants were allowed to trade from port to port in Asia in all but a few goods which were reserved for the Company merchants were also allowed to send precious stones, carpets and textiles back to England Portugal's monopoly on east-west trade through Macau, China came to an end England, Holland, France, Denmark, Sweden States and Russia (later followed by the United States) moved into the China trade establishing factories and offices in Macau and Canton (Guangzhou)

TWO FRENCH EXPLORERS DESCEND THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER

Governor of New France Comte de Frontenac sent an expedition to the Mississippi River Father Jacques Marquette, a studious Catholic Jesuit two weeks shy of turning thirty-six, Louis Joliet, a twenty-seven-year-old philosophy student who become a fur trader To confirm rumors of a great southward running river they traveled in two canoes paddled by five voyageurs -- May 1673 Marquette and Joliet did not discover the Mississippi River Spanish explorer Hernando De Soto had crossed it more than a century before them Indians had been using it for thousands of years Marquette and Joliet traversed (today's Wisconsin) -- summer 1673 and followed the Mississippi hundreds of miles south to (today's Arkansas River) far enough to confirm that it drained into the Gulf of Mexico but not so far that they would be captured by the Spanish their 2,500-mile canoe trip opened the heart of North America to France they introduced Christianity into 600,000 square miles of wilderness, they gave French names to the future cities from La Crosse to New Orleans, they transformed traditional Indian cultures Marquette and Joliet proved:

- it was possible to travel easily from the Great Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico by water,

- native peoples who lived along the route were generally friendly,
- natural resources of the lands in between were extraordinary

Both men kept records of the voyage

but as Louis Joliet traveled toward his home in Quebec

his canoe overturned outside Montreal and all of his records and notes were lost
all that remained of his experiences was an interview about where he had gone
and what he had seen

(Father Jacques Marquette's two manuscripts lay unread in a Jesuit archive for 150 years
only an abridged version of their travels appeared at the time [1681])

RADISSON AND GROSEILLERS CHANGE ALLIANCES ONCE AGAIN

Pierre-Esprit Radisson and Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers spent their time
journeying back and forth between England and Hudson Bay

advising their employers about provisions and trading commodities until 1675

however, during these years there was growing apprehension in New France

about the activities of the two explorers and of the Hudson's Bay Company

Radisson and des Grosseilliers were persuaded to return to French allegiance

but both men constantly changed their loyalty between France and England

whenever they felt they are not properly rewarded for their services

These wavering allegiances became a significant part of the diplomatic triangle

involving Louis XIV of France, Charles II of England and Hudson's Bay Company

Des Grosseilliers saw the easiest and quickest route to the richest fur region on the continent

was not by the difficult, dangerous and time-consuming canoe highway

through the Great Lakes and along the Grand-Portage–Lake of the Woods waterway,

but across Hudson Bay in ships carrying large cargoes quickly and easily

to the very heart of the continent

(Radisson and des Grosseilliers monument in history was the Hudson's Bay Company itself
despite his role in the history of Canada, the place and date

Medard Chouart, Sieur des Grosseilliers' death is unknown

Pierre-Esprit Radisson became a citizen of England [1687]

and died almost destitute [1710])

ATTEMPTS ARE MADE TO DISRUPT FRENCH TRADE

Iroquois Indians dominated the economically important Great Lakes fur trade

these natives long had been in conflict with the leaders of New France

At the urging of New England colonists the Iroquois interrupted the trade

between New France and the western tribes

in retaliation, New France leaders sent invaders

to Seneca Indian lands of western New York

There were similar tensions on the border between New England and New France

English settlers from Massachusetts Bay (whose charter included today's Maine area) had expanded their settlements into New France

RENE-ROBERT CAVALIER, SIEUR DE LA SALLE, EXPLORES THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER

Following up on the exploration of Father Jacques Marquette and fur trader Louis Joliet King Louis XIV sent Rene-Robert Cabalier, Sieur de la Salle with eighteen Indians to travel south from Canada down the Mississippi River to the Gulf of Mexico -- 1682

La Salle built the small Fort Prudhomme (today's Memphis, Tennessee) Robert La Salle's expedition reached the Gulf of Mexico -- April 9, 1682

there he built a cross, buried an engraved plate and claimed all the land drained by the Mississippi River for France

La Salle named this gigantic region *Louisiana* in honor of the French king On his return trip up the Mississippi River La Salle established Fort Saint Louis on the Illinois River

HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY ESTABLISHES YORK FACTORY

York Factory was located at the mouth of the Hayes River on the southwestern shore of Hudson Bay (in today's northeastern Manitoba, Canada)

York Factory, named after the Duke of York, was constructed to replace the much fought for Fort Nelson on the Hayes River -- 1684

York Factory served as a trading post, distribution point and administrative center for a massive Hudson's Bay Company fur trading empire reaching far into the wilderness (millions of dollars in trade goods will be shipped in and out of Canada from here)

FRENCH RAIDING PARTY CAPTURES THE HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY FACTORIES

French Army Captain Chevalier des Troyes led a party of soldiers and Canadian militiamen 810 miles to chase the English from James Bay

Fort Moose was easily captured by the French -- June 20, 1686 both Hudson' Bay Company Rupert House and the ship HMS *Craven* were captured -- July 3

Fort Albany fell -- July 26

England and France officially declared war on each other --1688

struggle for control of the Canadian fur trade had begun it resulted cutthroat competition and years of international strife

ENGLISH-FRENCH RIVALRY SPILLS ONTO NORTH AMERICA

Catholics and Protestants had not yet learned to dwell together, or even near each other, in harmony

New France was purely Catholic in government

England's colonies on the eastern seaboard were wholly Protestant
with the exception of Maryland but even Maryland had a large Protestant majority
France wanted to maintain control and expand its valuable North American possessions:

- rich fur-bearing St. Lawrence River area;
- cod fishing along the Grand Banks of Newfoundland;
- vast region of Louisiana drained by the Mississippi River

England was jealous of these resources and wanted to expand its own empire
beyond the Atlantic coast of New England

King William's War erupted in North America -- 1689-[1697]

Governor General of New France Louis de Buade, Comte de Frontenac et de Palluau
instigated Indian massacres against England's northern colonies -- July 1689

Dover, New Hampshire, a town of fifty settlers, was burned to the ground
half the people were massacred; the others were carried away
and sold into slavery

Pemaquid, Maine met a similar fate a month later

Schenectady, New York was attacked and burned -- February 1690
more than sixty were massacred, many were taken captive,
a few escaped into the night

towns of Casco and Salmon Falls soon were similarly attacked

English and French battled for control of the English James Bay factories

French forces under the command of Pierre Le Moyne Sieur d'Iberville,
added York Factory to the growing list of captured English forts -- 1694

England was left with lone posts on the west side of Hudson Bay

Fort Severn at the mouth of the Severn River

during King William's War these trading posts would change hands several times

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Aitken, Jonathan, *Nixon; A Life*, Regnery Publishing, Washington D.C., 1993.
- Allen, William, *An American Biographical and Historic Dictionary, Containing an Account of the Lives, Characters, and Writings of the Most Eminent Persons in North America from it First Settlement, and a Summary of the History of the Several Colonies and of the United States*, J. Griffin Press, Brunswick, Maine, 1832.
- Almont Lindsey, *The Pullman Strike, The Story of a Unique Experiment and of a Great Upheaval*, The University of Chicago Press, 1942.
- Ambrose, Stephen, *The Christmas Bombings*, New York: Random House, 2005.
- Ambrose, Stephen and Douglas Brinkley, *Witness to America, An Illustrated Documentary of the History of the United States from the Revolution to Today*, HarperCollins Publishers, 1999.
- Anderson, David L. editor, *The Columbia History of the Vietnam War*, New York: Columbia University Press, 2011.
- Andra-Warner, Elle, *David Thompson: A Life of Adventure and Discovery*, Heritage House Publishing, Victoria, B.C., 2010.
- Babcock, Chester, and Claire Applegate Babcock. *Our Pacific Northwest*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1963.
- Bagley, Clarence B, *Early Catholic Missions in Old Oregon*, Volume 1 and 2. Lowman and Hanford Company, Seattle 1932.
- Bagley, Clarence, *History of Seattle from the Earliest Settlement to the Present Time, Vol. I and II*, The S.J. Clarke Publishing Company: Chicago, 1916.
- Baldwin, Leland D. *The Stream of American History Vol. I & II*, New York American Book Company, 1952.
- Bancroft, Hubert Howe, *History of the Northwest Coast*. San Francisco: A.L. Bancroft Co., 1884.
- Bancroft, Hubert How, *History of Washington, Idaho, and Montana*, Volume XXIX San Francisco: The History Company, Publishers, 1890.
- Bancroft, Hubert How, *History of Washington, Idaho, and Montana*, Volume XXXI San Francisco: The History Company, Publishers, 1890.
- Bartlett, Laura B. Downey. *Students' History of the Northwest and State of Washington, Vol. I*. Tacoma, Washington: Smith-Digby Co., 1922.
- Barnouw, Erik, *The Golden Web: A History of Broadcasting in the United States: Volume 2: 1933-1953*, New York: Oxford University Press, 1968.
- Benson, E.F. *Sir Francis Drake*. New York: Harper and Brothers, 1927. Biddle, Nicholas, ed. *The Journals of the Expedition Under the Command of Capts. Lewis and Clark1814*. Reprint, New York: Heritage Press, 1962,
- Berner, Richard C. *Seattle 1900-1921: From Boomtown, Urban Turbulence, to Restoration*, Seattle: Charles Press, 1991.
- Berton, Pierre, *Klondike: The Last Great Gold Rush, 1896-1899*, Pierre Berton Enterprises, Ltd., Anchor Canada 1972.
- Berton, Pierre. *The Quest for the Northwest Passage and the North Pole, 1818-1909*, Viking Books, New York, 1988.
- Bishcoff, William N. S.J., *The Jesuits in Old Oregon*. The Caxton Printers, LTD., Caldwell,

- Idaho, 1945.
- Blee, Lisa, *Framing Chief Leschi: Narratives and the Politics of Historical Justice*, University of North Carolina Press, 2014.
- Blumenthal, Richard W. editor, *With Vancouver in Inland Washington Waters* McFarland & Company, Inc. Publishers, North Carolina, 2007.
- Bonneville Power Administration, *Fish and Wildlife Implementation Plan: Final Environmental Impact Statement*, Vol. 1, 1932.
- Boorstin, Daniel. *The Discoverers: A History of Man's Search To Know His World And Himself*, Random House, New York, 1983.
- Bork, Janine M. copyright 2000-2003, *History Of The Pacific Northwest Oregon and Washington*. Compiled and Published by the North Pacific History Company Portland, Oregon, 1889.
- Bourne, Edward Gaylord, *Essays in Historical Criticism*, Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, 1901.
- Brackenridge, Henry M., *Views of Louisiana, Together with a Journal of a Voyage up the Missouri River in 1811*, Cramer, Spear and Eichbaum, Pittsburg, 1814.
- Bragg, L.E., *More Than Petticoats: Remarkable Washington Women*. Falcon Publishing, Inc. Helena, Montana, 1998.
- Brazier, Don, *History of the Washington Legislature 1854-1963*, Published by the Washington State Senate, Olympia, Washington, 2000.
- Brooks, Noah, *First Across the Continent*, Scribner's Sons, New York, 1901.
- Brosnan, Cornelius J., *Jason Lee, prophet of New Oregon*, The Macmillan Co, New York, 1932.
- Brown, Hillary, *The Life and Times of Ester Clark Short*, self-published, February 2011.
- Bryce, George. *Remarkable History of the Hudson's Bay Company*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1910.
- Calder, Jenni, *Scots in Canada*, Luath Press, Limited Edinburgh, Scotland, 2004.
- Carey, Charles Henry, *History of Oregon*, The Pioneer Historical Publishing Company, Chicago-Portland, 1922.
- Carpenter, Cecelia Svinth, *Tears of Internment: The Indian History of Fox Island and the Puget Sound Indian War*. Tahoma Research Service, Tacoma, Washington. 1996.
- Carver, Jonathan. *Three Years Travels Through the Interior Parts of North America*. Philadelphia: Key and Simpson, 1796.
- Chapman, Charles. *History of California: The Spanish Period*. MacMillan Co., New York, 1921.
- Chittenden, Hiram Martin. *The American Fur Trade of the Far West*. New York: E.P. Harper, 1902.
- Churchill, Ward, Jim Vander Wall, *Agents of Repression: The FBI's Secret Wars Against the Black Panther Party & the American Indian Movement*, South End Press, Boston, Massachusetts, 1988.
- Clark, Norman H., *Mill Town -- A Social History of Everett, Washington, from Its Earliest Beginnings on the Shores to Puget Sound to the Tragic and Infamous Event Known as the Everett Massacre*, University, University of Washington Press, Seattle, 1970.
- Clarke, Samuel Asahel, *Pioneer Days of Oregon, Vol II*. Portland, Oregon: J.K. Gill Company, 1905.
- Cockburn, Alexander; Jeffrey St Clair, *Whiteout: The CIA, Drugs and the Press*. Verso Books, Brooklyn, New York, 1999.

- Commons, John Rogers. *Industrial Government (American Labor, from Conspiracy to Collective Bargaining)* Series I. MacMillan Company, New York, 1921.
- Cook, James. *Voyages of Captain James Cook*. London: Richard Phillips, 1809.
- Cook Warren L., *Flood Tide of Empire: Spain and the Pacific Northwest; 1543-1819*. Yale University Press, 1973.
- Corning, Howard McKinley. *Dictionary of Oregon History*. Portland, Oregon: Binfords & Mort, 1989.
- Coues, Elliot. *History of the Expedition Under the Command of Lewis and Clark*. New York: Francis P. Harper, 1893.
- Coues, Elliott, editor, *New Light on the Early History of the Greater Northwest -- the Manuscript Journals of Alexander Henry, Fur Trader of the Northwest Company and of David Thompson Official Geographer of the same Company, 1799-1814* in Three Volumes, Francis P. Harper, New York, 1897.
- Cox, Ross, *Adventures On The Columbia River, Including The Narrative Of A Residence Of Six Years On The Western Side Of The Rocky Mountains, Among Various Tribes Of Indians Hitherto Unknown*, Binfords and Mort, Portland, Oregon, 1950.
- Crawford, Lewis F., *The Exploits of Ben Arnold: Indian Fighter, Gold Miner, Cowboy, Hunter, & Army Scout*, University of Oklahoma Press, Norman, Oklahoma 1999.
- Crutchfield, James A. *It Happened In Washington: Remarkable Events that Shaped History*,. Helena, Montana: Falcon Press Publishing Co., Inc., 1995.
- Custer, Elizabeth Bacon, *Tenting on the Plains: Or, General Custer in Kansas and Texas*, Harper & Brothers Publishers, New York, 1895.
- Daniels, Roger, *Asian America: Chinese and Japanese in the United States since 1850*. University of Washington Press, Seattle, 1988.
- Dale, Harrison Clifford. *The Ashley-Smith Explorations, and the Discovery of a Central Route to the Pacific*. Cleveland: Arthur A. Clark, 1918.
- Davison, Gordon Charles. *The North West Company*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1918.
- Deloria, Vine, Jr., *Indians of the Pacific Northwest From the Coming of the White Man to the Present Day*, Doubleday & Company, 1977.
- De Smet, Pierre-Jean, S.J., *Life, Letters and Travels of Father Pierre-Jean De Smet: 1801-1873* Crabtree, Oregon: Narrative Press, 2005.
- De Smet, Pierre-Jean S.J., *Oregon Missions*. Reprint of New York Edition, 1847, Applewood Books, Carlisle, Massachusetts, 2007.
- Dimsdale, Thomas Josiah, *The Vigilantes o Montana, A Correct History of the Chase, Capture, Trial, and Execution of Henry Plummer's Notorious Road Agent Band, D.W. Tilton, Publisher, Virginia City, Montana, 1882*.
- Dodds, Gordon B. *The American Northwest: A History of Oregon and Washington*. The Forum Press, Inc. Arlington Heights, Illinois, 1986.
- Douglas, William O. *Go East, Young Man*. New York: Random House, 1974.
- Downey-Bartlett, Laura Belle, *Student's History of the Northwest and the State of Washington*. Smith-Digby Company, Tacoma, Washington, 1922.
- Downs, L. Vaugh, *The Mightiest of Them All: Memories of Grand Coulee Dam, USA*: American Society of Civil Engineers, 1993.
- Drury, Clifford Merrill, *On to Oregon: The Diaries of Mary Walker and Myra Eells*, University of Nebraska Press, 1963.

- Dryden, Cecil. *Up the Columbia For Furs*. Caldwell, Idaho: Caxton Printers, Ltd., 1949.
- Dryden, Cecil. *Dryden's History of Washington*. Portland, Oregon: Binfords & Mort, 1968.
- Duncan, Dayton. *Miles From Nowhere: Tales From America's Contemporary Frontier*. New York: Viking Penguin, 1993.
- Dye, Eva E. *McLoughlin and Old Oregon*. Portland, Oregon: Binfords and Mort, 1938.
- Dye, Eva Emery, *Stories of Oregon*, The Whitaker and Ray Company, San Francisco, 1900.
- Eckrom, J.A., *Remembered Drums, A History of the Puget Sound Indian War*, Pioneer Press Books, Walla Walla, Washington, 1989.
- Egan, Timothy, *The Good Rain*, Vintage Books, 1990.
- Ellington, Charles G., *The Trial of U.S. Grant: The Pacific Coast Years 1852-1854*. Glendale, California: Arthur H. Clark, 1986.
- Evans, Elwood, *History of the Pacific Northwest: Oregon and Washington, Vol. I.*, North Pacific History Company, Portland, Oregon, 1889.
- Farber, David, *Chicago '68*, University of Chicago Press. 1988.
- Farquhar, Francis P., *History of the Sierra Nevada*, University of California Press, Berkeley and Los Angeles, California, 1965.
- Federal Writers Project, *Washington: A Guide to the Evergreen State*, The Washington State Historical Society, 1941
- Ficken, Robert E., *The Forested Land: A History of Lumbering in Western Washington*, University of Washington Press, Seattle, WA, 1987.
- Findlay, John M and Ken S. Coates, editors, *Parallel Destinies: Canadian-American Relations West of the Rockies*, University of Washington Press, 2002.
- Fitcher, James R., *So Great a Proffit: How the East Indies trade transformed Anglo-American capitalism*, Harvard College, 2010.
- Ford, Henry, *My Life and Work*, Doubleday, New York, 1922.
- Flowers, Betty Sue (editor). *Joseph Campbell The Power of Myth with Bill Moyers*. Doubleday, New York, 1988.
- Foreman, Laura, editors of Time-Life Books: *Serial Killers -- True Crime*. 1992.
- France, George W., *The Struggle for Life and Home in the Northwest*, I. Goldmann, Stream Printer, New York, 1890.
- Franchere, Gabriel and Jedediah Huntington, *Franchere's Narrative of a Voyage to the Northwest Coast, 1811-1814*. Applewood Books, Carlisle, Massachusetts, 1854.
- Franchere, Gabriel, *Journal of a Voyage on the North West Coast of North America during the Years 1811, 1812, 1813 and 1814*, Toronto: The Champlain Society, 1969.
- Fuller, George W. *A History of the Pacific Northwest*, New York: Alfred A. Knopf, Inc., 1931.
- Gass, Patrick. *A Journal of the Voyages and Travels of a Corps of Discovery Under the Command of Captain Lewis and Captain Clarke, 1804, 1805, & 1806*. Pittsburg: David M'Keehan, 1808.
- Gibbs, Al. Article "The News Tribune", May 17, 1992.
- Goetzmann, William H. *Army Exploration in the American West: 1803-1863*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press, 1979.
- Godwin, George. *Vancouver, a Life*. New York: Appleton and Co., 1931.
- Golder, F.A., *Bering's Voyages*, Vol I & II. New York: Octagon Books, Inc., 1922.
- Golder, F.A. *Russian Expansion on the Pacific*. Cleveland: Arthur H. Clark Co., 1914.
- Gough, Barry M., *The Royal Navy and the Northwest Coast of North America, 1810 - 1914*, University of British Columbia Press, Vancouver, British Columbia, 1917.

- Gray, Alfred O. *Not By Might: The Story of Whitworth College. 1890-1965*. Spokane: Whitworth College, 1965.
- Greenwald, Richard A., *Exploring America's Past: A Reader in Social, Political and Cultural History, 1865-Present*, University Press of America, Inc. Lanham, Maryland, 1996.
- Groves, Leslie, *Now It Can Be Told: The Story of the Manhattan Project*, Harper, New York, New York, 1962.
- Haeberlin, Hermann and Erna Gunther. *The Indians of Puget Sound*. University of Washington Press, Seattle, Washington, 1930.
- Hamann, Jack, *On American Soil How Justice Became a Casualty of WWII*, Algonquin Books of Chapel Hill, North Carolina, 2005.
- Hamilton, Neil A., *The 1970s*, Facts on File Inc., New York, New York, 2006.
- Hamilton, Neil A., *Rebels and Renegades: A Chronology of the Social and Political Dissent in the United States*, The Muscovites Group, Inc. New York, New York, 2002.
- Hansen, James R, *First Man: The Life of Neil A. Armstrong*, Simon & Schuster Paperbacks, New York, 2005.
- Hare, Robert D., PhD., *Without Conscience: The Disturbing World of the Psychopath Among Us*. The Guildford Press, New York, 1999.
- Harper, Ida Husted, *The History of Woman Suffrage*, J.J. Little & Ives Company, New York 1922.
- Hauka, Donald J., *McGowan's War*, New Star Books Vancouver British Columbia, 2003.
- Hayes, Derek. *Historical Atlas of British Columbia and The Pacific Northwest*. Delta B.C., Canada: Cavendish Books Inc., 1999
- Hefferman, Trova, *Where the Salmon Run: The Life and Legacy of Billy Frank, Jr.*, University of Washington Press, 2012.
- Henry, Alexander. *New Light on the Early History of the Greater Northwest*. Edited by Elliot Coues. New York: F.P. Harper, 1897.
- Hidy, Ralph W., Frank Ernest Hill, Allan Nevins. *Timber and Men: The Weyerhaeuser Story*. MacMillan Co., New York, 1963.
- Hill, Beth. *The Remarkable World of Frances Barkley: 1769-1845*. Sidney, B.C.: Gray's, 1978.
- Hirabayashi, Gordon K., *A Principled Stand: The Story of Hirabayashi v. United States*, University of Washington Press, 2013.
- Hixon, Adrietta Applegate, *On to Oregon*, Ye Galleon Press, Fairfield, Washington 1973.
- Hosansky, David, *Eyewitness to Watergate: A Documentary History for Students*, CQ Press, Washington, D.C., 2007.
- Hunt, Hebert, *Tacoma: Its History and Its Builders; a Half Century of Activity*, The S.J. Clarke Publishing Company, Chicago Seattle Tacoma, 1916.
- Hunt, Hebert and Floyd C. Kaylor. *Washington West of the Cascades*. The S.J. Clarke Publishing Company, Chicago Seattle Tacoma, 1917.
- Igler, David, *The Great Ocean, Pacific Worlds From Captain Cook to the Gold Rush*, Oxford University Press, 2013.
- Inez, Emily Denny. *Blazing the Way*. Seattle: Rainier Printing Co. 1909.
- Irving, Washington. *Astoria*. Portland, Oregon: Binfords and Mort, 1950.
- Jensen, Vernon H., *The great strike of 1935, Lumber and Labor*, New York: Farrar and Rinehart, Ind, 1945.
- Jessett, Thomas, editor. *Report and Letters of Herbert Beaver, 1836-1838. Portland, Oregon: Champoeg Press, 1959. XI-XXIV.*

- Johanningsmeier, Edward P., *Forging American Communism, The Life of William Z. Foster*, Princeton University Press, 1994.
- Johansen, Dorothy O. and Charles Gates. *Empire of the Columbia*. New York: Harper & Brothers, 1957. Second edition: 1967.
- Johnson, William Henry. *The French Pathfinders in North America*. Boston: Little Brown, and Co., 1905.
- Johnson, Wellwood R. *Legend of Langley*. Langley, B.C.: Langley Centennial Committee, 1958.
- Jordan, John H., *Born Black in the U.S.A*, RoseDog Books, Pittsburg, Pennsylvania, 2016.
- Josephy, Alvin M., *The Nez Perce Indians and the Opening of the Northwest*, Houghton Mifflin Harcourt, 1997.
- Judson, Katherine, B. *Early Days in Old Oregon*. Chicago: A.C. McClurg & Co., 1916.
- Judson, Phoebe Goodell, *A Pioneer's Search for an Ideal Home: A Book of Personal Memoirs*, University of Nebraska Press, 1984.
- Kennedy, David M. *The American People in World War II, FREEDOM FROM FEAR PART II*, Oxford University Press, 1999.
- Kerber, Linda K., *No Constitutional Rights to Be Ladies: Women and the Obligations of Citizenship*, Farrar, Straus and Giroux, New York, 1998.
- Keyes, Erasmus Darwin, Brevet Brigadier-General, *Fifty Years' Observation of Men and Events: Civil and Military*. Reprint Kessinger Publishing, Whitefish, Montana, 2007.
- Kip, Lawrence, *Indian War in the Pacific Northwest: The Journal of Lieutenant Lawrence Kip*, University of Nebraska Press: Lincoln, Nebraska and London, England, 1999.
- Krause, Fayette Florent. *Democratic Party Politics in the State of Washington during the New Deal*, PhD. diss., U of W, 1971.
- Lahey, Dale, *George Simpson: Blaze of Glory*, Dundurn Press, Tronto, Canada, 2011.
- Lambert, Dale. *The Pacific Northwest: Past, Present, and Future*. Wenatchee, Washington: Directed Media, Inc., 1979. Second edition: 1986.
- Lang, Herbert O Himes and George Henry Himes, *History of the Willamette Valley*, Portland, Oregon, G.H. Himes, book and job printer, 1885.
- Laveille, E. J.S., *The Life of Father De Smet 1801-1873*, J.P. Kennedy & Sons, New York, 1915.
- Lee, W. Storrs. *Washington State: A Literary Chronicle*. New York: Funk & Wagnalls, 1969.
- Lent, D. Geneva. *West of the Mountains: James Sinclair and the Hudson's Bay Company*. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 1963.
- LeWarne, Charles Pierce, *Utopias on Puget Sound, 1885-1915*, University of Washington Press, 1975.
- Lien, Carsten, *Olympic Battleground: Creating and Defending Olympic National Park*. Mountaineers Books, Seattle, WA., 2014.
- Lillard, Charles, *Just East of Sundown: The Queen Charlotte Islands*, Horsdal and Schubart Publishers, Ltd., Victoria, B.C., Canada. 1995.
- Lingeman, Richard R., *The Nation. Guide to the Nation*, Vintage Books, 2009.
- Lockley, Fred. *Conversations With Pioneer Women*. Eugene, Oregon: Rainy Day Press, 1981.
- Loewen, James W. *Lies My Teacher Told Me*. New York: The New Press, 1995.
- Lyman, William Denison. *The Columbia River: Its History, Its Myths, Its Scenery, Its Commerce*. New York: G.P. Putnam's Sons, 1917.
- MacDonald, Angus. *Few Items of the West*. Washington Historical Quarterly Vol. 8, 1917.
- Magden, Ronald E, and Martinson, A.D., *Working Waterfront: The Story of Tacoma's Ships and*

- Men*, Tacoma: International Longshoremen's Local Nineteen, 1982.
- Mackenzie, Alexander. *Alexander Mackenzie's Voyage to the Pacific Ocean in 1793*, Chicago: R.R. Donnelly and Sons, 1931.
- Mackenzie Sir Alexander, *Voyages from Montreal Through the Continent of North America to the Frozen and Pacific Oceans in 1789 and 1793*, Vol. 1, A. S. Barnes & Company: New York, 1903.
- McCoy, Keith. *Cody: Colorful Man of Color*. White Salmon, Washington: Pahto Publications, 1988.
- McDonald, Lucile. *Search for the Northwest Passage*. Binford & Mort, Portland, Or., 1958.
- McNaughton, Wayne Leslie and Joseph Lazar Smith, *Industrial Relations and the Government*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1954.
- Magee, James J., *Freedom of Expression*, Greenwood Press, Westport, Connecticut, 2002.
- Magnuson, Senator Warren G. *Magnuson Papers*, U. of W.
- Maguire, Lori editor, *The Cold War and Entertainment Television*, Cambridge Scholars publishing, 2016.
- Manché, Frank, *Film Study: An Analytical Bibliography*, Volume 4, Fairleigh Dickinson University Press, Madison, New Jersey, 1990.
- Markholt, Otlie, *Maritime Solidarity, Pacific Coast Unionism 1929-1938*. Pacific Coast Maritime History Committee, Tacoma, Washington, 2007.
- Martin, Albro, *James J. Hill and the Opening of the Northwest*, Minnesota Historical Society Press, St Paul, 1976.
- Mearse, John. *Voyages made in the Years 1788 and 1789*. London, 1790.
- Meany, Edmond S. *Vancouver's Discovery of Puget Sound*. Portland, Oregon: Binford and Mort, 1949.
- Meany, Edmond Stephen, *History of the State of Washington*, The MacMillan Company, New York, 1910.
- Meeker, Ezra, *Ox-team Days on the Oregon Trail*, World Book Company, Yonkers-on-Hudson, New York, 1922.
- Meeker, Ezra. *Pioneer Reminiscences of Puget Sound: The Tragedy of Leschi Lowman & Hanford*, Seattle. 1905.
- Meeker, Ezra. *Story of the Lost Trail To Oregon* self-published by the author: Seattle, 1915. Reprinted by Ye Galleon Press: Fairfax, Washington, 1998.
- Meeker, Ezra, *Ventures and adventures of Ezra Meeker, or, Sixty years of frontier life*, Rainier Printing and Publishers, Seattle, Washington, 1909.
- Menzies, Archibald, *Menzies' Journal of Vancouver's Voyage April to October, 1792*. Edited by C.F. Newcombe. Victoria, B.C.: W.H. Cullin, 1923.
- Michaud, Stephen and Aynesworth, Hugh, *Ted Bundy: Conversations with a Killer*, Penguin Group, London, England, 1990.
- Morgan, Murray C., "Nelson Bennett and the Stampede Pass Tunnel," *Murray's People A Collection of Essays*. Tacoma Public Library Northwest Room, 1960.
- Morgan, Murray, *Seattle -- Her First Hundred Years*. Ballantine Books. New York, 1960.
- Morgan, Murray, *Skid Road*, Ballantine Books. New York, 1960.
- Morgan Murray C., *The John Meares Expeditions: The Last Wilderness* University of Washington Press, 1955.
- Morgan, Murray, *The Last Wilderness*. Viking Press: New York, 1955.
- Morison, Samuel Eliot, *The Maritime History of Massachusetts 1783-1860*, Houghton, Mifflin

- Company, 1921.
- Moulton, Gary E. editor, *The Lewis and Clark Trail Yesterday and Today*, University of Nebraska Press, Lincoln, Nebraska, 1988.
- Nelson, Polly, *Defending the Devil: My Story as Ted Bundy's Last Lawyer*. William Morrow and Company, New York, 1994.
- Newell, Gordon R. *Ships of the Inland Sea: the Story of Puget Sound Steamboats*. Portland: Binford & Mort, 1951.
- Niethammer, Carolyn. *Daughters of the Earth, The Lives and Legends of American Indian Women*. New York: Simon & Schuster, 1977.
- Nisbet, Jack, *Sources of the River: Tracking David Thompson Across Western North America*, Sasquatch Books, 1994.
- Nobleman, Marc Tyler, *The Klondike Gold Rush*, Compass Point Books, Minneapolis, Minnesota, 2006.
- Nokes, Richard J., *Almost a Hero: the Voyages of John Meares, R.N., to China, Hawaii, and the Northwest Coast*, Washington State University Press, 1998.
- Northwest Public Power Association, *Power Unlimited*. Spokane, Washington: Northwest Public Power Association, 1947.
- O'Meara, Walter. *The First Northwest Passage*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1960.
- Orloff, Richard W., *Apollo by the Numbers: A Statistical Reference, NASA History Series*. Washington, D.C., 2000.
- Palladino L.B., S.J. *Indian and White in the Northwest; A History of Catholicity in Montana, 1831-1891*. Baltimore John Murphy & Company, 1894.
- Palmer, Joel, *Journal of travels over the Rocky Mountains, to the Mouth of the Columbia River*, J.A. & U.P. James, Walnut Street, Cincinnati, Ohio, 1847.
- Parks, Jared. *The Life of John Ledyard: The American Traveller*, Kessinger Publishing, LLC, Whitefish, Montana, 2006.
- Parsons, William and W.S. Shiach, *An Illustrated History of Umatilla County and Morrow County*, W. H Lane Publisher, 1902.
- Peltier, Jerome, *Madame Dorion*. Ye Galleon Press. Fairfield, Washington, 1980.
- Plesch, Dan, *America, Hitler and the UN: How the Allies Won World War II and Forged Peace*. I. B. Tauris, New York, 2011.
- Pelz, Ruth. *The Washington Story*. Seattle: Seattle Public Schools, 1979.
- Pearlman, Michael D., *Truman and MacArthur*: Indiana University Press, Bloomington, Indiana, 2008.
- Pickett, Thomas Edward, *A Soldier of the Civil War*, The Burrows Brothers Company, Cleveland, Ohio, 1900.
- Pieroth, Doris H. *The Hutton Settlement: A Home for One Man's Family*. Spokane, WA: Washington State University Press, 2003.
- Pollard, Lancaster. *A History of the State of Washington*. Binfords & Mort, Publishers: Portland, Oregon, 1941.
- Portlock, Nathaniel. *A Voyage Round the World*. Dublin: J. Whitworth, 1789.
- Price, Andrew, Jr. *Port Blakely: The Community Captain Renton Built*. Seattle: Port Blakely Books, Publishers, 1989.
- Poole, Lisa with Dianne Robinson, *Torpedo Town U.S.A. A History of the Naval Undersea Warfare Engineering Station 1914-1989*. Diamond Anniversary Publishing Keyport, WA, 1989.

- Quaife, Milo M. *Journals of Captain Meriwether Lewis and Sergeant John Ordway*. Madison, Wisconsin Historical Society, 1916.
- Rader, Melvin. *False Witness*. University of Washington Press, 1969.
- Ramsay, Guy Reed, *Postmarked Washington: Thurston County*, Thurston County Historic Commission, 1988.
- Read, Anthony, *The World on Fire: 1919 and the Battle with Bolshevism*, W.N. Horton & Company, New York, London, 2008.
- Rhodes, Richard, *The Making of the Atomic Bomb*, New York: Simon and Schuster, 1986.
- Richards, Kent D., *Isaac I. Stevens: Young Man in a Hurry*, Brigham Young University Press, 1979.
- Richardson, A.D. *Beyond the Mississippi*. Hartford, 1867.
- Richardson, David. *Pig War Islands*. Eastsound, Washington: Orcas Publishing, 1971.
- Roberts, John E., *A Discovery Journal, George Vancouver's First Survey Season - 1792*, Trafford Publishing, Victoria, B.C., Canada, 2005.
- Roe, JoAnne, *Stevens Pass: The Story of Railroading and Recreation in the North Cascades*. Caxton Press, Caldwell, Idaho, 2002.
- Ronda, James P. *Astoria & Empire*. University of Nebraska Press. Lincoln, Nebraska: 1990.
- Ross, Alexander. *Adventures of the First Settlers on the Oregon or Columbia River*. London: Smith, Elder, & Co. 1849.
- Ross, Alexander, One of the Adventurers. *John Jacob Astor, To Establish the 'Pacific Fur Company: ' With an Account of Some Indian Tribes on the Coast of the Pacific*. London: Smith, Elder and Company, 1849.
- Ruby, Robert and John A. Brown, *The Cayuse Indians*, University of Oklahoma Press, 1972.
- Rule, Ann, *The Stranger Beside Me*, New York: Signet. 1989.
- Safire, William, *Safire's Political Dictionary*, Oxford University Press, 2008.
- Saindon, Robert A. editor, *Explorations Into the World of Lewis and Clark*. Vol. I-II, Lewis and Clark Trail Heritage Foundation, Inc., Great Falls, Montana, 2003.
- Sales, Roger. *Seattle: Past and Present*. University of Washington Press. Seattle, WA 1976.
- Scates, Shelby. *Warren G. Magnuson and the Shaping of Twentieth-Century America*. University of Washington Press. Seattle, WA 1997.
- Schafer, Joseph, PhD. *A History of the Pacific Northwest*. New York: The MacMillan Co., 1951.
- Scofield, William E. *Northwest Heritage*. New York: Amsco School Publications, Inc., 1978.
- Schwantes, Carlos Arnaldo. *The Pacific Northwest: An Interpretive History*. University of Nebraska Press, 1989.
- Shardlow, Tom, *Mapping the Wilderness: The Story of David Thompson, Napoleon and Co*. Toronto, Canada, December 30, 2006.
- Shea, John Dawson Gilmary, *History of Catholic Missions Among the Indian Tribes of the United States, 1529-1854*. Ayer Company Publishers, Inc., Manchester, N.H. 1969.
- Shimabukuro, Robert Sadamu, *Born in Seattle: The Campaign for Japanese American Redress*, University of Washington Press, 2001.
- Shipiro, David L. *Generating Failure*. Lanham, Maryland.: University Press of America, 1989.
- Simpson, George. *An Overland Journey Round the World During the Years 1841 and 1842*, 2 vols. in 1. Philadelphia: Lea and Blanchard, 1847.
- Sister Mary (Catherine McCrosson), *The Bell and the River*, Pacific Books Publishers, Palo Alto, California, 1957.

- Skinner, Constance Lindsay, *Adventurers of Oregon: A Chronicle of the Fur Trade*, Yale University Press, 1920.
- Smith, Jean Edward, *FDR*, Random House, 2007.
- Smith, Walker C. *The Everett Massacre*, I.W.W. Publishing Bureau, Chicago, 1918.
- Snowden, Clinton A. *History of Washington*. New York: Century History Co., 1909.
- Speck, Gordon. *Northwest Explorations*. Portland, Oregon: Binfords & Mort, 1954.
- Sperber, Ann M., *Murrow, His Life and Times*, Fordham University Press, New York, New York, 1999.
- Splawn, A.J., *KA-MI-AKIN, The Last Hero of the Yakimas*, Kilham Stationery and Printing Co., Portland Oregon, 1917.
- Stanton, Elizabeth Cady, Susan B. Anthony, and Matilda Joslyn Gage, *History of Woman Suffrage*, Vol 1, 1848-1861, Fowler & Wells, New York Publisher, 1881.
- Stenehjem, Michele Gerber, *On the Home Front*, University of Nebraska Press, Lincoln, Nebraska, 2002
- Strange, James. *James Strange's Journal and Narrative of the Commercial Expedition from Bombay to the Northwest Coast of America*. Madras: Government Press, 1928.
- Strawn, Arthur. *Sails & Swords Being the Golden Adventurers of Balboa and His Intrepid Company, Freebooters All, Discoverers of the Pacific*. New York: Brentano's, 1928.
- Steber, Rick. *Loggers: Tales of the Wild West Vol 7*. Bonanza Publishing, Prineville, Or., 1989.
- Stuart, David. *Discovery of the Oregon Trail*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1935.
- Swan, James Gilchrist, *The Indians of Cape Flattery, at the entrance to the Strait of de Fuca, Washington Territory*, Washington Smithsonian Institution, 1870.
- Swann, Brian and Arnold Krupat, editors, *Recovering the Word: Essays on Native American Literature*, University of California Press, 1987.
- Szasz, Ferenc Morton, *The Day the Sun Rose Twice: The Story of the Trinity Site Nuclear Explosion July 16, 1945*, University of New Mexico Press, Albuquerque, 1984.
- Terrill, John. *Black Robe: The Life of Pierre Jean DeSmet Missionary, Explorer, Pioneer*. Doubleday & Company, New York, 1964.
- Timmen, Frit. *Blow for the Landing-- A Hundred Years of Steam Navigation On the Waters of the West*. Caxton Printers, Caldwell, Idaho, 1972.
- Thorpe, Lloyd. *Men To Match The Mountains*. Seattle: Craftsman & Met Press, 1972.
- Thwaites, Reuben Gold, *Travels in America, 1750-1920*, A.H. Clark Company, Cleveland, Ohio, 1904.
- Todd, William, *The Seventy-Ninth New York Volunteers in the War of Rebellion*, Press of Brandow, Barton & Co., 1886.
- Toland, John, *The Rising Sun: The Decline and Fall of the Japanese Empire, 1936-1945*, The Modern Library, New York, 2003.
- Tolmie, William Fraser, *The Journals of William Fraser Tolmie, Physician and Fur Trader* Mitchell Press Ltd., Vancouver, B.C., 1963.
- Torrice, Robert G, Carroll, Andrew, *Goodwin, Doris Kearns*, In Our Own Words: Extraordinary Speeches of the American Century, Washington Square Press, 2008.
- Towse, Ed. and Prof. W.D. Alexander, Papers of the Hawaiian Historical Society, No. 11, *Some Hawaiians Abroad*, Read before the Society September 15, 1903.
- Tyrrelle, J.B. *Hearne, Samuel A Journey from Prince of Wales Fort in Hudson's Bay to the Northern Ocean in the Years 1769, 1770, 1771 and 1772*. Toronto: Champlain Society, 1911.

- Vancouver, George. *A Voyage to the North Pacific Ocean*. London: J. Stockdale, 1801.
- Vesilind, Priit J. "National Geographic". May 1996.
- Vestal, Stanley, *Jim Bridger Mountain Man*, First Bison Book, University of Nebraska Press, Lincoln, Nebraska, 1970.
- Victor, Frances Fuller, *The Early Indian Wars of Oregon Compiled from the Oregon Archives and Other Original Sources*, Frank C. Baker, State Printer, Salem, Oregon, 1891.
- Vining, Edward P. *An Inglorious Columbus*. New York: D. Appleton and Company, 1885.
- Vinton, Stallo, John Colter, *Discoverer of Yellowstone Park*. New York: Edward Eberstadt, 1926.
- Walling, A.G. *History of Southern Oregon, comprising Jackson, Josephine, Douglas, Curry and Coos Counties, compiled from the most authentic sources*. Portland, Ore., 1884.
- Waite, Donald E. *The Langley Story*. Maple Ridge, B.C.: Donald Waite Publishing, 1977.
- Walbran, John T. Captain. *British Columbia Coast Names*. Vancouver, Canada: J.J. Douglas, Ltd., 1971.
- Warren, James R., *War Years: A Chronicle of Washington State in World War II*, University of Washington Press, 2001.
- Weber, David J. Barbaros, *Spaniards and Their Savages in the Age of Enlightenment*, Yale University, 2005.
- Welch, William D., *A Brief History of Port Angeles*, Port Angeles: Crown Zellerbach Corporation, 1968.
- Wells, Henry Laurenz, *A Popular History of Oregon from the Discovery of America to the Admission of the States into the Union*, T.W. Hume, Portland, Oregon, 1889.
- Wellwood, R. Johnson, *Legend of Langley*, Langley Centennial Committee British Columbia, 1958.
- Wilkes, Charles, *Narrative of the United States' Exploring Expedition: During the ...*, Volume 1, Whittaker and Co., London, 1845.
- Wilkinson, Charles, *Messages from Frank's Landing: A Story of Salmon, Treaties, and the Indian Way*. University of Washington Press, Seattle, 2000.
- Williams, Joseph, *Narrative of a tour from the state of Indiana to the Oregon territory in the years 1841-2*, 1921.
- Willson, Beckles. *The Great Company*. New York: Dodd, Mead & Co. 1906.
- Winther, Oscar Osburn. *The Great Northwest*. New York: Knopf, 1947.
- Winther, Oscar Osburn. *The Old Oregon Country: A History of Frontier Trade Transportation and Travel*. Stanford University Press, 1950.
- Wood, Charles R., *The Northern Pacific: Main Street of the Northwest, A Pictorial History*, Bonanza Books. New York, 1968.
- Works Projects Administration, *The New Washington: A Guide to the Evergreen State*, The Washington State Historical Society, 1941.
- Wuerthner, George, *Olympic: A visitors Companion*, Stackpole Books, Mechanicsburg, PA., 1999.
- Wyeth, Nathaniel Jarvis. *The Correspondence and Journals of Captain Nathaniel J. Wyeth*. Edited by F.G. Young. Eugene, Oregon: University Press, 1899.
- Wyeth, Nathaniel, *Wyeth's Oregon or a Short History of a Long Journey*, Applewood Books, Carlisle, Massachusetts, 1833.
- Young, F.G., *Sources of the History of Oregon*, Vol. 1, Eugene Star Job Office, 1897.

- Zinn, Howard, *A People's History of the United States: 1492-Present*, Routledge, Taylor & Francis Group, London and New York, 1980.
- Catalog of the Public Documents of the Seventy-Third Congress... July 1, 1933 to December 31, 1934.
- History of the Pacific Northwest: Oregon and Washington*, Vol. 1, Compiled and Published by the North Pacific History Company of Portland, Oregon, 1889.
- Oregon Pioneer Association, Transactions of the Fifteenth Annual Reunion, Press of Geo. H. Himes, Portland, Oregon, 1887.
- St. James Encyclopedia of Labor History Worldwide, Vol. 1-2, St. James Press, 2003.
Compiled by Workers of the Writers' Program of the Work Project Administration in the State of Washington, *Washington: A Guide to the Evergreen State*, Binforde and Mort, Portland, Oregon.

ARTICLES

- "Army To Ban Aliens From Coast," *Oakland Tribune*, March 3, 1942.
- "Army Takes Over Jap Center Site," *Oakland Tribune*, March 8, 1942.
- Atomic Heritage Foundation*, www.atomicheritage.org
- Bagley, Clarence, *The Oregon Historical Quarterly* Volume 5, March, 1904-December, 1904.
- Bates, Alice L., *Historical Society of Southern California* Volume IX 1912-1913, J.B. Walters, Printers, 1914.
- Carr, Mary M., "Jay Fox: Anarchist of Home," *Columbia Magazine*, Spring 1990: Vol. 4, No. 1.
- Avery, Brian, "Home Colony," Washington," <http://recollectionbooks.com/siml/library/HomeColony.htm>, 1997.
- Center for Columbia River History, Document: "Indian Council in the Valley of the Walla Walla," Lawrence Kip, 1855.
- Cooley, Michael F. and Mary Lou, for the Officer-Cooley Family Association, "*The Transcribed Diary of Eli Casey Cooley as he came across the Oregon Trail and the Meek Cutoff in 1845*," <http://www.oregonpioneers.com/CooleyDiary.htm>
- De Meulles to the King of France, "1864, Report on Canadian Archives," 1899 Vol.\
- Easton, Charles L. "Equality as a Cooperative Colony," *The Seattle Times*, Sunday, November 25, 1962.
- Ehrlich, Dorothy M., "Remembering Gordon Hirabayashi," ACLU, January 11, 2012. www.aclu.org/blog/racial-justice/remembering-gordon-hirabayashi
- Erhart, Andie, The Great Depression in Washington State Labor Events Yearbook: 1935, Civil Rights and Labor History Consortium' University of Washington.
- Farrar, Victor J., *The Nisqually Journal*, The Washington Historical Quarterly for July, 1915-April, 1916.
- Fletcher, Randol B., "*Oregon or the Grave, A fresh perspective on the aftermath of the Lewis & Clark Expedition*," Oregon Magazine, 2003.
- Forney, Gary R., "Wilbur Fisk Sanders, a Force in Early Montana, The Most Unscrupulous Man Who Ever Disgraced the Legal Profession," *The Montana Pioneer*, <https://montanapioneer.com>

- Gebhardt, Chris, "45 years after Tranquility: One small step to a bright future," July 20, 2014, www.NASASpaceflight.com
- Gibbs, Al. Article "The News Tribune", May 17, 1992.
- Haines, Francis, "How the Indian Got the Horse," American Heritage, Vol. 15 February 1964.
- Klan, Yvonne Means. "Kanaka William," Beaver Magazine, Canada's National History Society, Winnipeg, Manitoba, Spring 1979.
- Krause, Fayette Florent. "Democratic Party Politics in the State of Washington during the New Deal" PhD. diss., U of W, 1971.
- Magnuson, Senator "Warren G. Magnuson Papers," University of Washington.
- Menefee, Sheldon C. *The Nation* Magazine, March 26, 1938. Vol. 146, No. 13, p. 354-355.
- Nokes, J. Richard Columbia Anthology: "Patriot or Scalawag?" Columbia Magazine, Fall 1990: Vol. 4, No. 3.
- Northwest Public Power Association, "*Power Unlimited*. Spokane, Washington." Northwest Public Power Association, 1947.
- Pipes, Nellie B., "Journal of John H. Frost, 1840-43," Oregon Historical Quarterly 35, No. 2 (1934), p. 139-167.
- Prosch Thomas W., "United States Army in Washington Territory," Washington Quarterly, Volume II, Washington University State Historical Society, Seattle, October 1907.
- Public Power in Snohomish County, "The fight in Snohomish County," www.snopud.com/AboutUs/history/pubpower.ashx?p=1349
- Sadamu Shimabukuro, Robert, "Born in Seattle: The Campaign for Japanese American Redress," (Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2001.
- Stamm, Amy, "We Choose to Go to the Moon and Other Apollo Speeches," Smithsonian National Air and Space Museum, July 17, 2019.
- The Washington Historical Quarterly, Volume X, January, 1919.
- Thornton, J. Quinn, "Oregon Pioneer Association Transactions for 1875."
- U.S. Department of Transportation Federal Highway Administration, Highway History, *Original Intent: Purpose of the Interstate System 1954-1956*, <https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/infrastructure/originalintent.cfm>
- Valentine, A.L., "Story of Pioneer Utilities in Seattle" *Railway and Marine News*, Vol XIV, March, 1916
- Vesilind, Priit J. "National Geographic" May 1996.
- Vouri Mike, "*The Pig War: Standoff at Griffin Bay*," published by: Discover Your Northwest, Seattle, WA. 2006.
- Watrous, Stephen D. editor, "John Ledyard's Journey Through Russia and Siberia 1787-1799 The Journal and Selected Letters," University of Wisconsin Press, 1930.
- White, Richard, "*It's Your Misfortune and None of My Own: A New History of the American West*," Red River Books, University of Oklahoma Press, Norman, Oklahoma, 1991.
- Whitman, Alden, "*Vigorous Defender of Rights*," *The New York Times*, Sunday, January 20, 1980.
- Wilkinson, Charles, "Messages From Frank's Landing: A Story of Salmon, Treaties, and the Indian Way, University of Washington Press, 2000.
- Wilkinson, Charles, "The People Are Dancing Again, The History of the Siletz Tribe of Western Oregon," University of Washington Press, 2010.
- The United Service A Monthly Review of Military and Naval Affairs, L.R. Hamersly Company, New York, 1902.

Whyte, Kenneth, "The Uncrowned King," Volume 1, Accessible Publishing Systems PTY, Ltd., 2010.
Ziontz, Lenore, "The Anti-Chinese Riots in Seattle" The Pacific Northwest Forum, A Journal
Devoted to the History, Literature, and Environment of the Northwest,
Eastern Washington University, 1976-1997.

ABOUT THE AUTHOR

I was born in Western Washington and raised in a small village on the shore of the Salish Sea. My professional life was dedicated to teaching primarily Washington State History and United States History at the junior high school level. Of course, I coached for several years. I was active in my local education association serving as president, treasurer and negotiator representing teachers. I also was active in local and state politics. After retiring from teaching I was elected Washington State Senate Sergeant-at-Arms for two four-year terms.

I began *Searchable Pacific Northwest History* as a lecture series to supplement the Washington State History textbooks available for junior high student use. I discovered that an understanding of the present is predicated on an understanding of our past.